

# Oracle Financials Cloud Implementing Expenses

---

19C

Author: Carol Ann Lapeyrouse

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

The business names used in this documentation are fictitious, and are not intended to identify any real companies currently or previously in existence.

# Contents

<b>Preface</b>	<b>i</b>
----------------	----------

---

<b>1 Expenses Configuration</b>	<b>1</b>
How You View Details About Predefined Scheduled Processes	1
Set Up and Use HTML Email Approval Notifications	1
Overview of Financials Configurable Workflow Notifications	2
Enable Expenses Configurable Email Notifications	7
How Rules Determine the Display Behavior of Fields on Email Approval Notifications	8
Example of Modifying Expenses Email Notifications Using Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher	9
Example of Modifying Expenses Spend Authorization Approval Notification Using Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher	14
Enable Contingent Workers to Enter Expense Reports	15
FAQs for Expenses Configuration	16

<b>2 Credit Card Data</b>	<b>21</b>
How Corporate Card Transaction Files Are Processed	21
Options for Deciding Who Pays the Corporate Card Issuer	25
How Accounting Entries for Corporate Card Transactions Are Distributed	27
Steps Your Administrator Takes to Receive Transaction Files from a Card Issuer	29
Options for Creating Corporate Cards	32
Mapping Rules	33
Wait Days	35
Travel Card Processing	37
How Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests for Company Pay Transactions Are Processed	38
How Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees Are Processed	41
How Downloading Corporate Card Transaction Files From American Express Are Processed	44
Upload VISA, MasterCard, and Diner's Club Corporate Card Transactions Files	45
Enable Pretty Good Privacy (PGP) for Corporate Card Transaction Files	46
Set Up to Receive American Express GL1025 Tokenized Files	48
Enable Tokenization for Visa VCF4 Files	50
Simplified Configuration for MasterCard CDF3 and Visa VCF4 Files	51
Upload American Express Non-Financial Transactions	51
Set Up Remittance Advice for American Express Tokenized GL1025 Files	52
FAQs for Credit Card Data	55

<b>3 Expense Policies and Rules</b>	<b>59</b>
Set Up Delegations	59
How You Configure Approval Rules	59
How You Define Approval Rules	66
How You Set Up Approval Rules for Delegated Expense Reports	73
Modify the Printable Expense Report Template	75
Printable Expense Report Template Attributes	80
Modify Terms and Agreements	97
Options for Configuring Expense Policies	101
Expense Category-Specific Fields	103
How You Capture Tax-Related Information in Expense Reports	103
Options for Showing or Hiding the Tax Classification Code	104
How You Capture Company-Specific Information	105
How You Create Expense Report Header Descriptive Flexfields	106
Expense Types	108
Options for Controlling the Behavior of Expense Fields	109
Options for Creating Expense Templates	112
How Expense Item Accounting Is Derived	113
Entertainment Expense Policy	115
Set Up an Accommodations Expense Policy	117
Set Up a Meals Expense Policy	120
Itemize Meals Expense Categories	123
Set Up an Airfare Policy	123
Set Up a Car Rental Policy	125
Set Up a Miscellaneous Expense Policy	128
Capture Attendee Information for Expense Categories	131
How You Set Up a Mileage Expense Policy	132
Example of Completing a Mileage Rate Spreadsheet	134
How You Upload Cumulative Mileage from a Third Party	137
Integrate with Google Maps for Trip Distance Calculation	139
How You Set Up Expense Report Auditing	141
Audit Selection Rules	143
How You Add to or Remove Employees from the Audit List	145
Options for Setting Up Receipt Management Rules	147
Expense Report Payment Hold Rules	148
FAQs for Expense Policies and Rules	149


<b>4</b>	<b>Travel</b>	<b>153</b>
	How You Set Up Prerequisites for Travel Partner Integration	153
	Setting Up a Travel Partner and Booking Sites: Explained	154
	How You Set Up Travel Integration	157
	How You Set Up Travel Itinerary Validation Rules	162
	Resolving Travel Itinerary Import and Validation Issues: Explained	165
	Managing Trip Expense Reports	171
	Automatic Trip Expense Reports	171
<b>5</b>	<b>Cash Advances</b>	<b>173</b>
	Cash Advance Approval Rules	173
	Upload a Cash Advance File from a Third-Party System	175
	How Accounting Entries for Cash Advances Are Distributed	176
<b>6</b>	<b>Spend Authorizations</b>	<b>179</b>
	Overview of Spend Authorizations	179
	How You Configure Spend Authorization Request Approval Rules	179
	Options for Setting Up Spend Authorizations with Budgetary Control	181
	Video	183
	Worked Example	183
	How Budgetary Control and Spend Authorizations Work Together	186
<b>7</b>	<b>Image Processing</b>	<b>189</b>
	How Receipt Images Are Processed	189
	How Receipt Image-Processing Components Work Together	190
	How Setup Components That Affect Receipt Image Processing Work Together	193
<b>8</b>	<b>Expense Reimbursements</b>	<b>205</b>
	How Third-Party Expense Reimbursements Are Processed	205
	Expense Report Data Flow Using a Third-Party Application	207
<b>9</b>	<b>Mobile Devices</b>	<b>211</b>
	Disable the Scan Option on Mobile Expenses	211


# Preface

This preface introduces information sources that can help you use the application.

## Using Oracle Applications

### Using Applications Help

Use help icons  to access help in the application. If you don't see any help icons on your page, click your user image or name in the global header and select **Show Help Icons**. Not all pages have help icons. You can also access [Oracle Applications Help](#).

 **Watch:** This video tutorial shows you how to find help and use help features.

You can also read [Using Applications Help](#).

### Additional Resources

- **Community:** Use [Oracle Cloud Customer Connect](#) to get information from experts at Oracle, the partner community, and other users.
- **Guides and Videos:** Go to the [Oracle Help Center](#) to find guides and videos.
- **Training:** Take courses on Oracle Cloud from [Oracle University](#).

### Conventions

The following table explains the text conventions used in this guide.

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates user interface elements, navigation paths, or values you enter or select.
<code>monospace</code>	Monospace type indicates file, folder, and directory names, code examples, commands, and URLs.
>	Greater than symbol separates elements in a navigation path.

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the [Oracle Accessibility Program website](#).

Videos included in this guide are provided as a media alternative for text-based help topics also available in this guide.

## Contacting Oracle

### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit [My Oracle Support](#) or visit [Accessible Oracle Support](#) if you are hearing impaired.

### Comments and Suggestions

Please give us feedback about Oracle Applications Help and guides! You can send an e-mail to: [oracle\\_fusion\\_applications\\_help\\_ww\\_grp@oracle.com](mailto:oracle_fusion_applications_help_ww_grp@oracle.com).



# 1 Expenses Configuration

## How You View Details About Predefined Scheduled Processes

You can use web services to run predefined scheduled processes.

### Scheduled Processes

Before you can schedule a process, you must sign in as a corporate card administrator, expense auditor, or travel administrator. When you sign in as a specific job role, you can then see processes that relate to your job role.

To schedule processes, perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to the Navigator and click the **Scheduled Processes** link to open the Scheduled Processes page.
2. Click the **Schedule New Process** button.
3. In the Schedule New Process dialog box, select the applicable process and click **OK** to open the **Process Details** dialog box.
4. Select the applicable parameters for your process and click **Submit**.

### Security

Privileges provide the necessary access to run specific scheduled processes. Privileges are granted to duty roles, which are granted to job roles. To see which job roles inherit the needed privileges, use the Security Console or the security reference manuals for the appropriate product family.

## Set Up and Use HTML Email Approval Notifications

You can conveniently receive HTML-based expense report approval notifications in emails. To use HTML-based email approval notifications, you must opt-in to the Usability Enhancements for Expenses feature.

### Opt-In to Usability Enhancements for Expenses

In the Offerings work area, enable the Usability Enhancements for Expenses feature:

- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Feature: Usability Enhancements for Expenses
- Choice: Enhanced Expenses HTML Approval Notification

### Displaying Fields

The following table contains the rules that determine whether fields are displayed on HTML email approval notifications.

Value	Display Behavior on HTML Approval Notification
Currency	Amounts are converted to the approver's currency.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Expense Report Owner's Name</li> <li>Expense Report Total</li> <li>Purpose</li> <li>Expense Report Number and Submitted Date</li> </ul>	The header section contains the Expense Report Owner's Name, Expense Report Total, Purpose, Expense Report Number, and Submitted Date. These values provide an overview of key expense report details.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Merchant Name</li> <li>Description</li> <li>Location</li> </ul>	Merchant Name, Description, and Location are dynamic values that display when they exist in the expense report.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Date</li> <li>Expense</li> <li>Amount</li> </ul>	Date, Expense, and Amount are static values that always display on the notification.
Itemizations	Itemizations only display if they exist for the parent expense item.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Violation Type</li> <li>Justification</li> </ul>	Violation Type and Justification only display as a line-level violation when a policy violation occurs.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Project</li> <li>Task</li> </ul>	Project and Task display for each itemized line if they are different for each itemized line. When they are the same, they display at the parent expense level.
Cost Center	Cost Center only displays if the cost center is different from the default cost center.
Sort Order	Expense item lines are sorted by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Absolute amount in descending order</li> <li>Date in ascending order</li> <li>Expense type in ascending alphabetic order</li> </ul>
Airfare	Airfare displays as a separate table on the notification because it's typically a large expenditure.

### Related Topics

- Overview of Profile Options
- Create and Edit Profile Options
- Set Profile Option Values
- Hierarchy in Profile Levels
- How can I access predefined profile options

## Overview of Financials Configurable Workflow Notifications


The Financial applications, as part of certain business flows, automatically send notifications for review or approval. For example, when a user submits an expense report, the approvers receive an email containing the approval request. Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher reports are used for some flows to generate the content and format. You can enable BI Publisher-based notifications, which are ready to use as delivered. The notification templates can be easily configured to meet other specific requirements. If required, you can change the delivered template layouts and content, to add images, change colors and styling, add or remove attributes or modify text.


The following table shows the financial products that use configurable notifications, along with their associated features, and workflow task names:

Product	Feature Name	Report or Notification Name	Workflow Task Name
General Ledger	Journal Approval Notifications	Journal Approval Report	FinGlJournalApproval
Payables	Invoice Approval Notifications	Invoice Approval Report	FinApInvoiceApproval
Payables	Hold Resolution Notifications	Hold Resolution Notification	FinApHoldApproval
Payables	Payment Approval Notifications	Payment Approval Notification	PaymentApproval
Payables	Invoice Account Coding Notifications	Invoice Account Coding Email Notification	FinApInvoiceAccountCoding
Expenses	Expense Report Approval Notifications	Expense Report Approval Notification	FinExmWorkflowExpenseApproval
Expenses	Expense Reimbursement Notifications	Reimbursement Paid to Card Issuer Notification	FinExmReimToCardIssuerFyi
		Reimbursement Paid by Check Notification	FinExmReimToEmpByCheckFyi
		Reimbursement Paid by Direct Deposit Notification	FinExmReimToEmpByDepositFyi
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Expense Report Adjusted by Auditor Notification	FinExmExpenseAuditFyi
		Expense Report Rejected by Auditor Notification	FinExmExpenseAuditFyi
		Pending Payment with Warnings Notification	FinExmExpenseAuditFyi
		Pending Payment with Warnings Notification	FinExmReceiptManagementFyi
		Expense Report Returned by Auditor Notification	FinExmReportShortpaidReceiptIssue
		Short-Paid Report with Receipt Issue Notification	FinExmReportShortpaidPolicyIssue

Product	Feature Name	Report or Notification Name	Workflow Task Name
		Short-Paid Report with Noncompliance Notification	
Expenses	Cash Advance Notifications	Cash Advances Approval Notification	FinExmWorkflowCashAdvanceApproval
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Payment is Held Notification	FinExmReceiptManagementFyi
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Payment is Released Notification	FinExmReceiptManagementFyi
Expenses	Expense Reimbursement Notifications	Reimbursement Has Been Paid to Employer Notification	FinExmReimToEmpByCheckFyi
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Mileage Adjustment Notification	ExpenseAuditMileageAdjustmentFyi
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Missing Receipt Declaration is Required Notification	FinExmReceiptManagementFyi
Expenses	Cash Advances Notifications	Overdue Cash Advance Notification	FinExmWorkflowOverdueNotification
Expenses	Cash Advances Notifications	Cash Advances Automatically Applied Notification	FinExmWorkflowCashAdvanceAutoAppliedFyi
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Inactive Employee's Outstanding Transactions Notification	FinExmInactiveEmployeeSubmitExpenseFyi
Expenses	Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications	Inactive Employee-Accept Responsibility Notification	FinExmInactiveEmployeeAcceptResp
Intercompany	Intercompany Email Notifications	Intercompany Transaction Approval Notification Intercompany Enter Receiver Distribution Notification	FinFunTransactionApproval for Intercompany Transaction Approval Notification FinFunEnterDistRequestForAction for Intercompany Enter Receiver Distribution Notification
Bill Management	User Registrations Notifications	Registration Confirmation. New Account Registration Confirmation. Account Access Revocation Notification. Access Revocation Notification.	N/A

Product	Feature Name	Report or Notification Name	Workflow Task Name
Budgetary Control	Budgetary Control Override Email Notifications	Budget Override Request Notification Budget	OverrideNotificationFyi
Budgetary Control	Budgetary Control Override Email Notifications	Override Taken Notification	OverrideNotificationFyi
Receivables	Manual Credit Memo Request Notification	Manual Credit Memo Request Notification	FinArTrxnsCreditMemosCreationPostProcessing

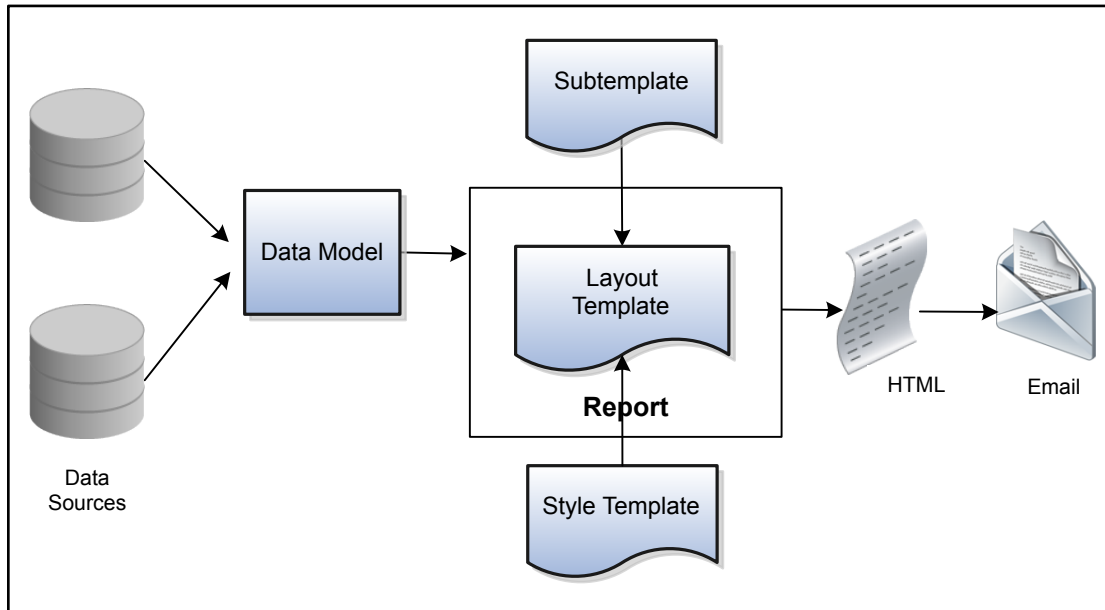
 **Note:** The in-app notification is also configurable.

 **Note:** When you receive a workflow email notification, you can alternatively find the same notification by clicking the Notifications icon in the global header or opening the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area. Your report edits don't affect the other notification methods.

## Process Overview

Generating configurable notifications through BI Publisher involves various types of objects in the BI catalog, including data models, subtemplates, style templates, and reports. Reports pull data from data models and generate notifications in an HTML format. The report layout templates use common table and paragraph styles and refer to a central subtemplate that

contains reusable notification components. This figure shows how these BI objects work together to generate the notification content.



- **Data Sources:** Store the attributes and attribute values for business objects and transactions in the application (example of data sources being transaction tables)
- **Data Model:** Determines which attributes from data sources are available to be included in the notification and how that data is retrieved
- **Subtemplate:** Provides common components, such as a branding logo and buttons, that can be reused in multiple reports.
- **Style Template:** Provides styles such as the type of lines and fonts to use in tables, or the font type, size, and color to use for headings
- **Report:** Contains a layout template that determines:
  - Which attributes appear in the notification, from the data model used for the report
  - What the notification looks like, leveraging components from the subtemplate and styles from the style template used for the report
- **HTML:** Format of the output generated by the report
- **Email:** What the notification looks like, leveraging components from the subtemplate and styles from the style template used for the report
- **In-App Notification:** Has the HTML output embedded in the application UI

Each workflow task with configurable notifications has a corresponding predefined report in the BI catalog.. For example, the Invoice Approval report contains the Invoice Approval Notifications report layout template and uses the Invoice Approval Data Model.

## Notification Modifications

When you enable configurable email notifications, the predefined reports and related objects in the BI catalog will be used to generate the email notifications. The report-based notifications provide the same information as the standard notifications. In addition, the format of report-based notifications is optimized for mobile devices. To modify the email notifications, you can edit copies of the predefined reports, data models, and subtemplate. However, you can't change the style template. You proceed as you would to edit any report, data model, or subtemplate in the catalog, for example:

1. Find a predefined report for expense approval in the BI catalog.
2. Use the Customize option to create a copy, or copy the report and paste it within the Custom folder.
3. Edit the copied report layout template.

Before modifying workflow email notifications, it's recommended that you familiarize yourself with BI Publisher in general. This will improve your ability to change your notifications by formatting emails to meet your business requirements.

With BI Publisher-based email notifications you:

- Use only the Template Builder for Word add-in to edit the .rtf template in Microsoft Word, rather than the layout editor or other tools available for creating and editing report layout.
- Edit a copy of predefined layout templates, rather than creating reports or layout templates.

 **Note:** Review the My Oracle Support (MOS) note: Configurable Workflow Notifications: Implementation Considerations (Doc ID 2215570.1).

## Steps to Enable

In the Offerings work area, enable the Configurable Email Notifications feature as follows:

1. Offering: Financials
2. Functional Area: Budgetary Control, Expenses, Intercompany, General Ledger, or Payables
3. Feature: Configurable Email Notifications
4. Choices: The specific notifications you want to enable
5. Click **Done**.

### Related Topics

- [Best Practices for Layouts in Workflow Notifications](#)
- [Preview Changes to Layout Templates for Workflow Notifications](#)
- [Modify Journal Approval Email Notifications Using Oracle Business Intelligence \(BI\) Publisher](#)
- [Modifying Invoice Approval Email Notifications Using Oracle Business Intelligence \(BI\) Publisher: Worked Example](#)

## Enable Expenses Configurable Email Notifications

You can use workflow email approval notifications to submit approvals to approvers. These approval notifications are Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher-based approval notifications that are embedded in emails. If you want to change the

content or appearance of your email approval notifications, you can modify the content or format of the Oracle BI Publisher templates.

Before you can use or modify workflow email approval notifications, you must enable in Setup and Maintenance any or all of the following sets with their corresponding notifications:

- Expense Report Approval Notifications
  - Expense report approval notification
- Expense Reimbursement Notifications
  - Expense report payment notification to employee (check)
  - Expense report payment notification to employee (direct deposit)
  - Payment to card issuer notification
- Expense Audit and Receipt Management Notifications
  - Expense report is rejected by auditor
  - Expense report is returned to employee
  - Expense report is short paid due to receipt issue
  - Expense report is adjusted
  - Expense report is short paid due to non-compliance issue
  - Pending payment with warnings
- Cash Advance Notifications
  - Cash advance approval notification

## Enabling Configurable Email Notifications

To enable workflow email approval notifications, follow these steps:

1. **Navigator > My Enterprise > Offerings.**
2. In the Offerings work area, select **Financials**.
3. Click **Opt In Features**.
4. On the Opt In: Financials page, select **Expenses**.
5. Click the **Edit** icon.
6. On the Edit Features: Expenses page, select **Configurable Expenses Email Notifications**.
7. Click the **Edit** icon.
8. In the **Feature Name: Configurable Expense Email Notifications** dialog box, select any or all of the notification sets.
9. Click **Save and Close**.



## How Rules Determine the Display Behavior of Fields on Email Approval Notifications

You can configure Expenses email approval notifications that are based on Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher templates. When you enable these notifications, the application automatically generates them.

For the Oracle BI Publisher-based email approval notifications, Expenses uses predefined rules. The following table contains the rules that determine whether the fields are conditionally displayed on the email approval notification.

Display Rule Number	Values	Display Rules
1	Currency	If an approver has a different user-preferred currency from the expense report reimbursement currency, the expense report's approximate amount in the user preferred currency is displayed to the approver.
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Merchant Name</li><li>• Description</li><li>• Location</li></ul>	Displayed if applicable.
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Violation Type</li><li>• Justification</li></ul>	A line-level violation is displayed when a policy violation occurs.
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Project</li><li>• Task</li></ul>	Displayed if applicable.
5	Cost Center	Displayed if applicable.
6	Itemized Lines	Displayed if applicable.
7	Number of Days	Displayed if applicable.
8	Personal	When an employee specifies an amount as Personal, this amount is shown on the notification and marked as Personal.
9	Card	A corporate card transaction is displayed with Card to indicate a card transaction. A cash transaction is displayed as an amount without displaying Cash.
10	Receipt Required	When an expense item line is Receipt Required, it is displayed with a <b>Receipt Required</b> icon.

# Example of Modifying Expenses Email Notifications Using Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher

This example shows you how to modify the Expense Report Approval email notification template using Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher templates.

The following table summarizes questions to consider for this scenario.

Questions to Consider	This Example
Do I want to change in the header of the email approval notification?	Add a word to the header.
Do I want to add fields or columns to or remove fields or columns from the email approval notification?	Add a field to the template.

You can modify an Expenses BI Publisher email approval notification by:

1. Exporting the Expense Approval Data Model
2. Downloading the Expense Report Approval template
3. Editing the Expense Report Approval template
4. Adding field and table attributes to the Expense Report Approval template
5. Previewing the modified Expense Report Approval template
6. Uploading the modified Expense Report Approval template

## Prerequisites

Before you can modify an Expenses workflow email approval notification, complete these steps:

1. Download and install the Template Builder for Word, which is a BI Publisher add-on for Microsoft Word.
  - a. Sign into the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
  - b. On the Oracle Business Intelligence home page by the Get Started section, click the **Download BI Publisher Desktop Tools** link.
  - c. Select and install **Template Builder for Word**.
2. Download a copy of the subtemplate, which is the FinFunWorkflowNotificationSub.rtf file, to your local drive.
  - a. Click the Catalog menu.
  - b. In the BI Catalog, expand **Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates**.
  - c. Click the **Edit** link for Workflow Notification Subtemplate.
  - d. On the Workflow Notification Subtemplate - Sub Template page in the Templates section, click the language name link in the Locale column.
  - e. Save the FinFunWorkflowNotificationSub.rtf file to your local drive.

3. Create an expense report and note the expense report number. You enter the expense report number when you export the data model .xml file.

## Exporting the Expense Approval Data Model

Before you can modify the Expense Report Approval template, you must export the .xml file that contains the predefined data model attributes for the notifications. Complete these steps:

1. Sign into the Oracle BI Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
2. **Navigator > Tools > Reports and Analytics.**
3. On the Oracle BI Publisher home page, click the Catalog menu.
4. On the Catalog page in the Folders pane, expand **Shared Folders > Financials > Workflow Notifications.**
5. Expand the Expenses folder.
6. Click the Expenses subfolder to display the data models and the notification templates.
7. Click the **Data Models** link.
8. By Expense Approval Data Model, click the **Edit** link.  
  
The Diagram tab displays data sets for the Expense Approval Data Model.
9. Scroll to see all the data sets.
10. To ensure that all data sets include requested elements with null values in the output XML data, complete these steps:
  - a. In the Data Model pane, click the **Properties** link.
  - b. In the Properties section, select the **Include Empty Tags for Null Elements** check box.
11. In the Data Model pane, click the **Data Sets** link.
12. On the Expense Approval Data Model page, select the Data tab and scroll to locate the **Expense Report Number** field.
13. In the **Expense Report Number** field, enter the expense report number that you created in the third step of the Prerequisites section in this document.
14. Click **View** to see the sample data and all the available attributes.
15. Click **Save As Sample Data.**
16. Click **OK.**
17. Click **Export.**
18. Click **Save as** to save the Expense Approval Data Model .xml file to your local drive.

## Downloading the Expense Report Approval Template

The Expense Report Approval template contains the structure of the email approval notification. To download a copy of the Expense Report Approval template to your local drive, complete these steps:

1. Click the Catalog menu.
2. On the Catalog page in the Folders pane, expand **Shared Folders > Financials > Workflow Notifications > Expenses.**
3. Click the Expenses subfolder to display data models and the notification templates.
4. By Expense Report Approval, click the **More** link, and select **Customize.**  
An image of the predefined Expense Report Approval Email Notification appears. A copy of the Expense Report Approval template is automatically created in the Custom folder. You can find the copy by expanding Shared Folders > Custom > Financials > Workflow Notifications > Expenses.

5. By the predefined Expense Report Approval Email Notification template, click the **Edit** link.
6. Click **Save as** to save the Expense Report Approval Email Notification template to your local drive as an .rtf file.

 **Tip:** Save the downloaded template with the name **UpdatedExpenseApprovalNotificationReport.rtf** to distinguish it from the predefined template.

## Editing the Expense Report Approval Template


To edit the header section of the Expense Report Approval Email Notification template, complete these steps:

1. Double click the UpdatedExpenseApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file you saved to your local drive.
2. In the header section, place your cursor between **Expense** and **Approval**.
3. Type **Report**. The text now reads **Expense Report Approval**.  
You can add, delete, or change words in the Expense Report Approval template.
4. Save and close the .rtf file.

## Adding Field and Table Attributes to the Expense Report Approval Template

To add field and table attributes to the Expense Report Approval template, complete these steps:


1. In Microsoft Word, open your local copy of the UpdatedExpenseApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file.

 **Note:** Depending on your version of Microsoft Word or your installation of Template Builder for Word, you may see either a BI Publisher tab or you may find BI Publisher by the Add-ins menu.

2. From the Add-ins menu, select **BI Publisher > Data > Load Sample XML Data**.
3. In the **Select XML data** dialog box, search for and select the Expense Approval Data Model .xml file you downloaded.
4. Click **Open**.

A message displays that indicates your .xml data was successfully loaded.

5. Click **OK**.
6. To insert a field in the Expense Report Approval template, place your cursor at the end of the line you want to insert into, and press the Enter key on the keyboard.
7. From the Add-ins menu, select **BI Publisher > Insert > Field**.
8. In the **Field** dialog box, scroll to the EXPENSES folder, select **IMG\_REQ\_FLAG**, and click **Insert**.  
This step inserts text that indicates a receipt image is required. You can add fields from the data model anywhere in the Expense Report Approval .rtf template.
9. From the Add-ins menu, select **BI Publisher > Insert > Field**.
10. In the **Field** dialog box, scroll to the RECENTSIMILAREXPENSES folder, select any field that you want to insert, and click **Insert**.


 **Note:** You can also insert fields that are associated with the following folders: RecurringViolations, RecentSimilarExpenses, and UnappliedCashAdvances.

11. Save and close the UpdatedExpenseApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file.

## Previewing the Modified Expense Report Approval Template

Before uploading your modified Expense Report Approval template to the BI Catalog, you can preview the changes you made. By previewing changes, you can avoid uploading a modified template that displays errors in the emails sent to users.

1. Open your local copy of the UpdatedExpenseApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file in Microsoft Word.
2. At the beginning of your modified .rtf template, save the path information for future reference so you can replace it after previewing. The path information may look like this: `<?import:xdoxsl:///Common Content/Templates/Workflow Notification Subtemplate.xsb?>`
3. Replace the path at the beginning of your modified .rtf template with the location of the subtemplate that you downloaded as a prerequisite. For example, change `<?import:xdoxsl:///Common Content/Templates/Workflow Notification Subtemplate.xsb?>` to `<?import:file:///C:/Template_Directory/FinFunWorkflowNotificationSub.rtf?>`

 **Note:** In the preceding example, part of the replacement path, C:/Template\_Directory, represents the folder in which the user downloaded the subtemplate to in the second step of the Prerequisites section in this document. Ensure that you change all backward slashes to forward slashes.

4. From the Add-ins menu, select **BI Publisher > Preview > HTML**.
5. If the preview reflects your expected changes, then change the path at the beginning of your modified .rtf file back to the original path.
6. From the Add-ins menu, select **Validate Template**.
7. Save your changes in Microsoft Word.

## Uploading the Modified Expense Report Approval Template

To upload and use the modified Expense Report Approval template for email approval notifications, complete these steps:

1. On the Oracle BI Publisher home page, click the Catalog menu.
2. On the Catalog page in the Folders pane, expand **Shared Folders > Financials > Workflow Notifications**.
3. Click the Expenses subfolder to display the data models and the notification templates.
4. By the Expense Report Approval, click **Edit**.
5. On the Expense Approval Report page, click **Add New Layout**.
6. In the Upload or Generate Layout section, click the **Upload** icon.
7. In the **Upload Template File** dialog box, **Layout Name** field, enter **UpdatedExpenseApprovalReportTemplate**. The entry represents the name of the Expense Report Approval Template .rtf file that you downloaded and saved to your local drive with the prefix Updated.
8. In the **Template File** field, browse for your modified UpdatedExpenseApprovalReportTemplate.rtf file on your local drive, select the template, and click **Open**.
9. In the **Upload Template File** dialog box from the **Type** choice list, select **RTF Template**.
10. From the **Locale** choice list, select **English (United States)**.
11. Click **Upload** to open the **Processing** dialog box and return to the Expense Approval Report page. The uploaded modified .rtf file appears.
12. On the Expense Approval Report page, click the **View a list** link.
13. In the Layout section in the row for the Updated Expense Report Approval Template, select the **Default Layout** check box. This step enables your modified Expense Report Approval Notification template to act as the default email approval notification.
14. Click the **Save Report** icon.

### Related Topics

- How You Modify Copies of Predefined Reports
- Set Up for RTF and Excel Report Layout Templates

## Example of Modifying Expenses Spend Authorization Approval Notification Using Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher

This example shows you how to modify the Authorization Approval Notification template using Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher templates.

The following table summarizes questions to consider for this scenario.

Questions to Consider	This Example
Do I want to change the header of the authorization approval notification?	Add a word to the header.
Do I want to add fields or columns to or remove fields or columns from the authorization approval notification?	Add a field to the template.

You can modify an Expenses BI Publisher authorization approval notification by:

- Editing the Spend Authorization Approval Notification template
- Adding field and table attributes to the Spend Authorization Approval Notification template

## Prerequisites

Before you can modify an Expenses workflow authorization approval notification, complete these steps:

1. Download and install the Template Builder for Word, which is a BI Publisher add-on for Microsoft Word.
  - a. Sign into the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
  - b. On the Oracle Business Intelligence home page by the Get Started section, click the **Download BI Publisher Desktop Tools** link.
  - c. Select and install **Template Builder for Word**.
2. Download a copy of the subtemplate, which is the AuthorizationApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file, to your local drive.
  - a. Click the Catalog menu.
  - b. In the Catalog pane, expand **Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates**.
  - c. Click the **Edit** link for the Authorization Approval Notification template.
  - d. On the Authorization Approval Email Notification page, click the **Edit** link.

- e. Select the Save File option and click **OK**.
  - f. Save the AuthorizationApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file to your local drive.
3. Create an spend authorization and note the spend authorization number. You enter the spend authorization number when you export the data model .xml file.

## Editing the Spend Authorization Approval Notification Template


To edit the header section of the Authorization Approval Notification template, complete these steps:

1. Double click the UpdatedAuthorizationApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file you saved to your local drive.
2. In the header section, place your cursor after **Authorization Approval**.
3. Type **Notification**. The text now reads **Authorization Approval Notification**.  
You can add, delete, or change words in the Authorization Approval Notification template.
4. Save and close the .rtf file.

## Adding Field and Table Attributes to the Spend Authorization Approval Notification Template

To add field and table attributes to the Authorization Approval Notification template, complete these steps:

1. In Microsoft Word, open your local copy of the UpdatedAuthorizationApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file.


 **Note:** Depending on your version of Microsoft Word or your installation of Template Builder for Word, you may see either a BI Publisher tab or you may find BI Publisher by the Add-ins menu.



2. From the Add-ins menu, select **BI Publisher > Data > Load Sample XML Data**.
3. In the **Select XML data** dialog box, search for and select the Authorization Approval Data Model .xml file you downloaded.
4. Click **Open**.  
A message displays that indicates your .xml data was successfully loaded.
5. Click **OK**.
6. To insert a field in the Authorization Approval Notification template, place your cursor at the end of the line you want to insert into, and press the Enter key on the keyboard.
7. From the Add-ins menu, select **BI Publisher > Insert > Field**.
8. In the **Field** dialog box, scroll to the SPEND\_AUTH\_HEADER\_DS folder, select **SA\_FUNCTIONAL\_CURRENCY\_CODE**, and click **Insert**.
9. Save and close the UpdatedAuthorizationApprovalNotificationReport.rtf file.

## Enable Contingent Workers to Enter Expense Reports

Contingent workers are workers who don't have a direct employment relationship with your company. They are typically supplied by an employment agency or they are self-employed contractors.

Before you can enable and reimburse contingent workers for incurred business expenses, you must perform the high-level steps listed in the following table.

 **Note:** The first two steps are prerequisites for the last step.

High-Level Step	Application	Selected Action Steps
1	In your human resource application, create a person as a contingent worker.	Ensure that you set up the contingent worker with a Worker Type of Contingent Worker.
2	<p>In your procurement application, set up a:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supplier</li> <li>• Supplier site</li> <li>• Supplier bank account at the supplier or supplier site level</li> </ul>	<p>You must set up a default payment method at the supplier or supplier site level.</p> <p> <b>Tip:</b> When you create an invoice, a payment method is required. If you don't specify a default payment method at the supplier site level, the payment method automatically populates from the supplier setup.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Bank account information is used to pay supplier invoices by EFT.</p>
3	In Oracle Fusion Expenses, associate the contingent worker with the supplier.	In the Auditing Tasks pane, click the <b>Manage Contingent Workers</b> link and select the applicable supplier and supplier site.

#### Related Topics

- [Payment Methods](#)
- [Payment Method Defaulting](#)
- [Set Up a Supplier's Bank Account](#)
- [Create a Supplier and Supplier Site](#)
- [How can I create a user](#)

## FAQs for Expenses Configuration

### How can I configure an employee's check mailing address?

Sign in to in Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources as a Human Resources specialist and select the applicable check mailing address.

For an existing employee, navigate to the Manage Employment page. In the Expenses Information section, select **Home** or **Office** from the **Expense Check Send-to Address** choice list.

For a new employee, navigate to the Hire an Employee page. In the Expenses Information section, select **Home** or **Office** from the **Expense Check Send-to Address** choice list.



## How can I access Expenses predefined flexfields?

Access predefined flexfields using the Define Flexfields task list as follows:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Define Flexfields task list.
2. Click the **Define Flexfields** task list link to display the tasks.
3. Click the task link that corresponds to the flexfields you are searching for.
4. Enter data for any of the search parameters and click **Search**.
5. If you don't know the flexfield name or the code, open the **Module** choice list and click the **Search** link.
6. In the **User Module Name** field, enter **Expenses** and click **Search**.
7. Select **Expenses** and click **OK**.
8. Click **Search**.
9. Select a flexfield and click the Edit icon to view its details.

## How can I access Expenses predefined lookups?

Access Oracle Fusion Expenses predefined lookups using the Define Lookups task list as follows:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Define Lookups task list.
2. Click on the **Define Lookups** task list link to view the Define Lookups tasks.
3. Click the task link that corresponds to the lookups you are searching for.
4. Enter data for any of the search parameters and click **Search**.
5. If you don't know the lookup type or the meaning, open the **Module** choice list and click the **Search** link.
6. In the **User Module Name** field, enter **Expenses** and click **Search**.
7. Select **Expenses** and click **OK**.
8. Click **Search**.
9. Select a lookup type to view its lookup codes.

 **Tip:** To filter the lookup codes, click the Query By Example icon. Enter the term you want to filter on and press **Enter** on the keyboard.

## How can I access Expenses predefined profile options?

Access Oracle Fusion Expenses predefined profile options using the Define Profiles task list as follows:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Profile Options task.
2. Click on the **Manage Profile Options** task link to open the Manage Profile Options page.
3. Enter data for any of the search parameters and click **Search**.
4. Alternatively, from the **Application** choice list, select **Expenses** and click **Search**.
5. If you don't know the profile option code or the display name, open the **Module** choice list and click the **Search** link.
6. In the **User Module Name** field, enter **Expenses** and click **Search**.
7. Select **Expenses** and click **OK**.
8. Click **Search**.
9. Select a profile option to view its details.

## Can I implement Expenses in another country if I have already implemented Expenses in one country?

Yes. You must set up applicable expense policies and rules, expense templates, and corporate card programs for the new country's business units. New users can start entering expenses as soon as setup is complete.

## Why do I have to configure the barcode font mapping?

To display and print the barcode properly on expense reports, you must map the barcode font to the correct font in Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher Enterprise (Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise).


To do this, perform the following steps:

1. In Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise, sign in as a user with Administrator access.
2. In the toolbar, click the Catalog menu.
3. In the Catalog pane, open Shared Folders and then open the Financials folder.
4. Select the Expenses folder and then select the Printable Expense Report Template icon.
5. Click the **Edit** link. The Printable Expense Report Template tab appears.
6. In the toolbar, click the Properties icon. The **Report Properties** dialog box appears.
7. In the **Report Properties** dialog box, select the Font Mapping tab.
8. In the RTF Templates region, add a new row.
9. In the **Font Family** field, enter Bookman.
10. From the Target Font choice list, select 128R00.TTF.

 **Note:** Code 128 is the barcode symbology provided with Oracle Fusion Applications.

11. Click the **OK** button.
12. To save the barcode font mapping, click the Save icon in the toolbar.

To use another barcode symbology, you must load the barcode font to the Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Server and then perform steps 1 to 12.

 **Note:** At any point in time, you can have only one active barcode font mapping for the Printable Expense Report Template. That is, only one active mapping can be used for the barcode font in the Printable Expense Report Template.

## Can I implement a country-specific version of Oracle Fusion Expenses?

No. A country-specific version of Expenses isn't available. Expenses supports both global and local requirements.

## How can I enable employees to enter expense reports?

To enable employees to enter expense reports, you must sign in to Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources as a Human Resources specialist. Then you can create employee records. Whether you create an employee record for an existing or a new employee, the mandatory Expense Entry Duty is automatically assigned.

For an existing employee, navigate to the Manage Employment page, select the employee's business unit on the Assignment Details tab in the Assignment section. Then select the default expense account in the Expenses Information section.

For a new employee, navigate to the Hire an Employee page, select the employee's business unit on the Assignment Details tab in the Assignment section. Then select the default expense account in the Expenses Information region.

## How can I enable only a set of users to charge expenses against projects?

The Project Expense Allocation Duty allows employees to charge expenses against projects and tasks. Manually grant this duty role to the user when he or she is identified as a project user. To grant the duty role to the user, you must create a custom role that contains the Project Expense Allocation Duty. Then assign the new custom role to the user.

Alternately, you can also assign the abstract role, Project Team Member, or the job role, Project Manager, to the user. The user can then charge expenses to projects and tasks.

To enable project users to charge expenses to a project, they must also have a job assigned to them. Assign the job to the user in the Setup and Maintenance work area by using the Manage Users page. Alternately, you can assign the job to the user in the Person Management work area by using the Manage Employment page.

## How can I enable some or all users to charge against other accounts or cost centers?

The expense accounting privilege named Override Expense Account Allocation allows employees to charge expenses against companies and cost centers that aren't their default company or cost center. If users must charge expenses to other companies or cost centers, you can assign the privilege to some or all employees. To do so, navigate to: Setup and Maintenance > Tools > Security Console.

## How can I enable all account segments for expense report users?

Set the value for the EXM\_ALLOW\_FULL\_ACCT\_OVERRIDE profile option to **Yes**. When you set the profile value to **Yes**, expense report users can change the segment values of expense accounts during expense entry to accurately reflect the charge allocations of their expenses. You can set the value to **Yes** in the **Account** field on the Create Expense Item page. Navigate to: **Setup and Maintenance > Search Tasks: Manage Administrator Profile Values > Search: EXM\_ALLOW\_FULL\_ACCT\_OVERRIDE**.

## How can I control automatic population of expense fields?

By creating the profile option, EXM\_DFLT\_FROM\_PREV\_EXPENSE, on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page and setting the Profile Value to **N** at the site, product or user level. When the value is set to **N**, values that were previously populating from an expense will stop populating. Instead, only the following fields are automatically populated on the Create Expense Item page when you create multiple expense items:

- **Date:** Populated with the system date.
- **Currency:** Populated with the ledger currency as set up in Human Capital Management.
- **Company** and **Department:** Populated with values that are set up in your default expense account in Human Capital Management.

When the value is set to **N**, the following fields are blank since they no longer automatically populate values from the previous expense item:

- **Template**
- **Expense Location**
- **Project Number** and **Task Number**

In addition, you can optionally prevent automatic population of the conversion rate by deselecting the **Default conversion rate** check box on the Edit Conversion Rates and Policies page for a business unit.

## What's an expense location?

The location where the expense was incurred. Oracle Expenses captures expense location to enforce corporate policies. The expense location can determine specific merchant tax fields that appear in the UI, including the tax classification code. The application uses the location information, which is centrally stored.

## Can I deploy Oracle Expenses Cloud as a stand-alone application?

Yes. You can deploy Oracle Expenses Cloud as a stand-alone application if you perform specific product tasks. In Setup and Maintenance, search and select the Define Ledger Configuration for Rapid Implementation task list and the Define Taxes for Rapid Implementation task list. Additional tasks to perform include: Manage Common Options for Payables and Procurement, Manage Disbursement System Options, Manage Payment Methods, and Manage Payment Process Profiles. You must also set up employees and their assignments in the application.

## How can I enable third-party integration for expense report payments?

You can specify a third-party reimbursement application on the Manage Expenses System Options page. The default option processes employee expenses through Oracle Fusion Payables.

## 2 Credit Card Data

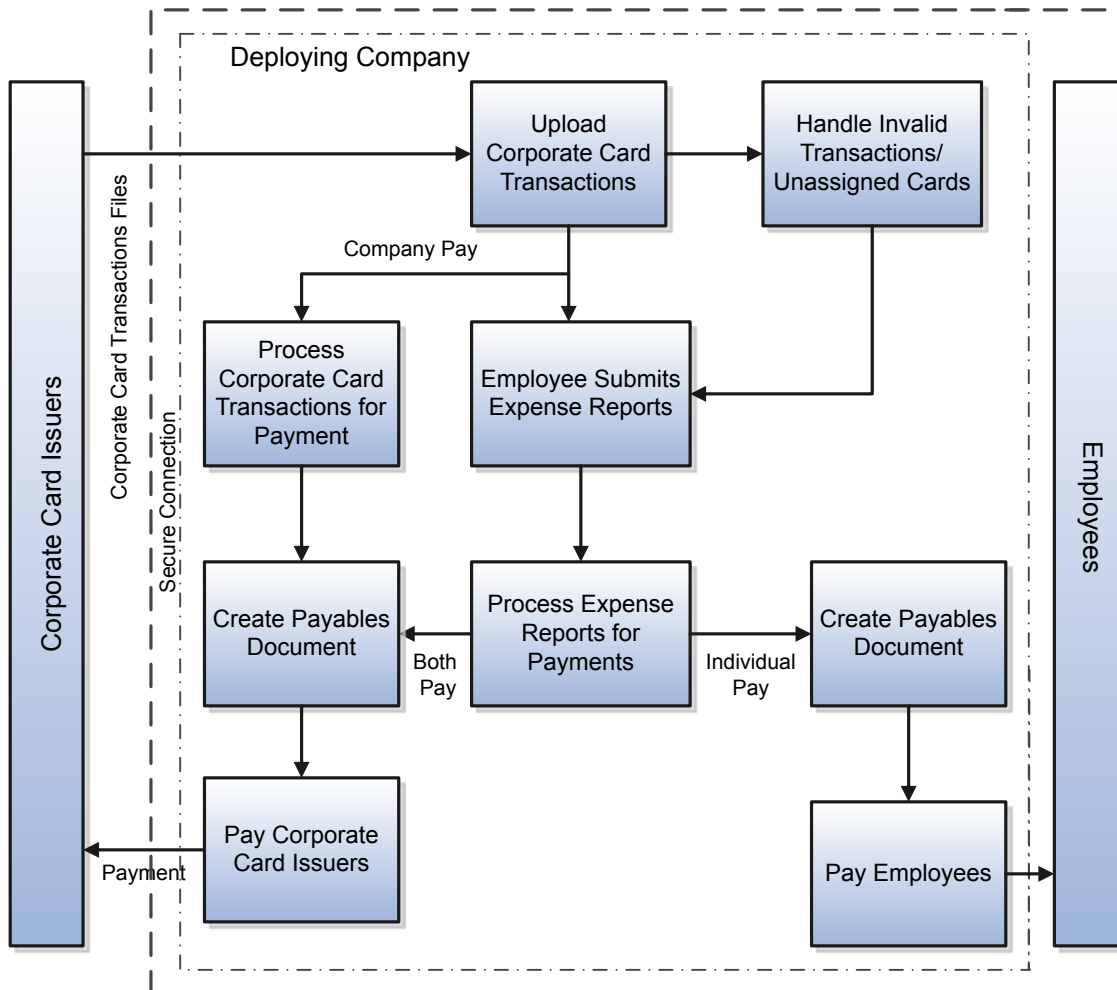
### How Corporate Card Transaction Files Are Processed

Before you can begin processing corporate card transaction files, your company must establish connectivity with the corporate card issuers. You must also determine the transaction file format and the transaction file delivery frequency. After establishing a secure connection, your company receives transaction files. The application loads the transaction file and validates the transactions. The application loads eFolio summary and detail transactions if they are present in the file. All valid transactions are created as expense items and are available to employees for inclusion in the expense reports. All invalid transactions are available for corporate card administrators to review and correct. After correction, these transactions are validated again and become available for expense reporting.

When you implement corporate credit card functionality, you must decide whether your company or its employees are responsible for paying the credit card issuer. The three payment options that you can implement in Expenses are the following:

- **Individual Pay:** The employee pays the corporate card issuer for all corporate card transactions
- **Company Pay:** Your company pays the corporate card issuer for all transactions
- **Both Pay:** Your company pays the corporate card issuer for business expenses and the employee pays the corporate card issuer for personal expenses

This figure shows an overview of the corporate card transaction files processing.



## A Setting That Affects Corporate Card Transaction Files

The process flow of corporate card transaction files is based on which of the three payment options your company decides to implement. Your company can implement one, two, or all three of the payment options by geographical region, organizational hierarchy, or other criteria. For example, a global company might have **Both Pay** implemented in the US and **Individual Pay** implemented in the UK. Another company might have **Both Pay** for one set of organizations and **Individual Pay** for another set of organizations within the UK.

When creating a company account for a card program, select a payment option from the **Payment Due From** list on the **Create Company Account** page.

## How Corporate Card Transaction Files Are Processed

This section provides examples of the corporate card transaction files process flow for each payment option. For each example, assume that an employee reports cash and categorizes card transactions as both business and personal when creating and submitting an expense report.

### Individual Pay


The Individual Pay payment option is simpler than Both Pay or Company Pay. Whether you identify corporate card transactions as business or personal expenses, the employee pays the corporate card issuer for both business and personal expenses. When the employee creates an expense report, both business and personal transactions are reported. The employee is, however, reimbursed by your employer for the corporate card business expenses.

The following table provides an example of Individual Pay corporate card transaction files processing:

Action	Description
Set up company account and download data file.	Obtain the corporate card transactions data file from your corporate card provider.
Upload data file into Expenses.	Upload and validate your corporate card transactions files.
Create and submit expense report.	<p>When you create an expense report, you select the corporate card transactions that you want to submit on the report. You determine if transactions are business or personal expenses. By default, transactions are identified as Business.</p> <p>You're only reimbursed by your employer for business expenses. Once processed on an expense report, corporate card transactions are no longer available in the list of transactions to be added to expense reports. This rule applies to both business and personal expenses.</p>
Review and approve expense report.	After you submit the expense report, your manager must approve it. After managerial approval, the report is verified to ensure that required receipts are attached and that the report is in compliance with your company's policies.
Reimbursement.	After the expense report has been reviewed and approved, it's ready for invoice creation in Payables to facilitate payment processing. To create an invoice with the amount due to the employee, run the Process Expense Reimbursements program. Then the payment to the employee is processed through Oracle Fusion Payments.

### Company Pay

For the Company Pay payment option, your employer pays the corporate card issuer for all corporate card transactions incurred by its employees. The employee is only reimbursed for cash business expenses. Corporate card transactions reported as business expenses have no effect on the amount that is reimbursed to the employee.

 **Note:** If the employee reports any transactions as personal expenses, these transactions are offset against any cash business expenses reported. Therefore, the amount reimbursable to the employee is reduced by the amount of the corporate card personal expenses.

The following table provides an example of Company Pay corporate card transaction files processing:

Action	Description
Set up company account and download data file.	Obtain the corporate card transactions file from your corporate card provider.
Upload data file into Expenses.	Upload and validate your corporate card transactions files.
Create and submit expense report.	<p>When you create an expense report, select the corporate card transactions that you want to submit. You determine if transactions are business or personal expenses.</p> <p>Cash expenses aren't charged to the company corporate card but are considered business expenses. Cash expenses aren't reimbursed as corporate card business expenses. Corporate card transactions designated as personal expenses reduce the amount you're reimbursed.</p> <p>You are only reimbursed by your employer for cash business expenses. Once processed on an expense report, corporate card transactions are no longer available in the list of transactions to be added to expense reports. This rule applies to both business and personal expenses.</p>
Review and approve expense report.	After you submit the expense report, your manager must approve it. After managerial approval, your report is verified to ensure that required receipts are attached and that the report is in compliance with your company's policies. Any corporate card transactions designated as personal expenses are also displayed to the managers for review.
Export the expense report from Expenses to Payables.	<p>After the expense report has been reviewed and approved, it's ready for invoice creation in Payables to facilitate payment processing.</p> <p>To create the invoice with the amount due to the employee, run the Process Expense Reimbursements program. Then the payment to the employee is processed through Oracle Fusion Payments.</p> <p>To create an invoice with the amount due to the card issuer, run the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process. Then the payment to the employee is processed through Oracle Fusion Payments. The card issuer can be paid at any time, regardless of the status of the expense report.</p>

## Both Pay

For the Both Pay payment option, your company pays the corporate card issuer for transactions that are categorized as business expenses. The employee pays the corporate card issuer for all corporate card transactions reported as personal expenses. An invoice can't be created for the corporate card issuer until the expense report is exported to Payables as an invoice.

The following table provides an example of Both Pay corporate card transaction files processing:

Action	Description
Set up company account and download data file.	Obtain the corporate card transactions data file from your corporate card provider.
Upload data file into Expenses.	Upload and validate your corporate card transactions files.
Create and submit expense report.	When you create an expense report, select the corporate card transactions that you want to submit.



Action	Description
	You are reimbursed only by your employer for cash business expenses. Once processed on an expense report, corporate card transactions are no longer available in the list of transactions to be added to expense reports. This rule applies to both business and personal expenses.
Review and approve expense report.	After you submit the expense report, your manager must approve it. After managerial approval, your report is verified to ensure that required receipts are attached and that the report is in compliance with your company's policies. When the Payables review process is complete for an expense report, a new expense report containing only corporate card transactions is created. The new report is based on the existing report by copying only the business transactions, which are used to pay the card issuer. If the expense report contains transactions charged to two corporate cards, two reports are created to pay the corporate card issuers. These reports are named 1 and 2 respectively.
Process expense reimbursements.	<p>After the card issuer expense report is created, it's ready for invoice creation in Payables to facilitate payment processing.</p> <p>To create the invoice with the amount due to the employee and to the card issuer, run the Process Expense Reimbursements program. Then the payment to the employee and the corporate card issuer is processed through Oracle Fusion Payments. The invoice due to the employee contains accounting distributions and project accounting, when applicable, for both the cash and corporate card expenses.</p> <p>The corporate card issuer invoice contains a single accounting distribution for all corporate card expenses against the expense clearing account.</p>


## Options for Deciding Who Pays the Corporate Card Issuer

Deciding who is responsible for paying the corporate card issuer is an important decision. You can choose from the following options:

- **Individual Pay:** The employee pays the corporate card issuer for all corporate card transactions.
- **Company Pay:** Your company pays the corporate card issuer for all transactions.
- **Both Pay:** The employee pays the corporate card issuer for personal expenses and your company pays the corporate card issuer for business expenses.

### Individual Pay

For the Individual Pay option, the employee pays the corporate card issuer for both business and personal transactions. The employee reports both expenses in expense reports. To ensure that required receipts are attached and that the report is in compliance with your company's business policies, the employee's expense report is verified. When the report is approved by the employee's manager, the employee is reimbursed for corporate card business expenses and cash business expenses.


 **Note:** Cash business expenses are paid by cash or check instead of a corporate card.

The following table describes the Individual Pay option where employees pay the corporate card issuer for corporate card business and personal expenses. Your company reimburses employees for corporate card business and cash business expenses.

Employees Pay Corporate Card Issuer	Company Pays Corporate Card Issuer	Company Doesn't Pay	Company Reimburses Employees
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corporate card business expenses</li> <li>Corporate card personal expenses</li> </ul>	Not Applicable	Corporate card personal expenses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corporate card business expenses</li> <li>Cash business expenses</li> </ul>

## Company Pay

For the Company Pay option, the employee doesn't pay the corporate card issuer. Your company pays the corporate card issuer for corporate card and cash business transactions incurred by the employee. When the employee creates an expense report, business and personal expenses must be reported, but your company reimburses the employee for corporate card and cash business expenses. Any personal expenses are deducted from the cash business expenses and recovered by your company.

 **Note:** Your company can pay the corporate card issuer at any time, depending on the payment terms. Submission or approval of expense reports isn't required for payment to the card issuer.

The following table describes the Company Pay option where your company pays for corporate card and cash business expenses. Your company also reimburses employees for corporate card and cash business expenses.

Employees Pay Corporate Card Issuer	Company Pays Corporate Card Issuer	Employees Reimburse Company	Company Reimburses Employees
Not Applicable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corporate card business expenses</li> <li>Corporate card personal expenses</li> </ul>	Corporate card personal expenses	Cash business expenses

## Both Pay

For the Both Pay option, the employee pays the corporate card issuer for corporate card transactions reported as personal expenses and your company pays the corporate card issuer for business expenses. When the employee creates an expense report, he selects corporate card business transactions. When the report is approved, the employee pays the corporate card issuer for corporate card personal expenses. Your company reimburses the employee for cash business expenses. This payment option is also referred to as joint liability.

The following table describes the Both Pay option where employees pays for personal expenses. Your company pays the corporate card issuer for business expenses.

Employees Pay Corporate Card Issuer	Company Pays Corporate Card Issuer	Company Doesn't Pay	Company Reimburses Employees
Corporate card personal expenses	Corporate card business expenses	Corporate card personal expenses	Cash business expenses

## How Accounting Entries for Corporate Card Transactions Are Distributed

Accounting entries vary depending on which payment option is used by your company.

The following table illustrates a sample expense report with various payment liabilities and amounts.

Payment Method	Amount
Cash	500 USD
Corporate Card Business Expenses	650 USD
Corporate Card Personal Expenses	299 USD
Corporate Card Transactions from Corporate Card Issuer	949 USD

Data in the preceding table is used in subsequent sections to illustrate how accounting entries are distributed for each payment liability.

## Settings That Affects Payment Options

The following options available from the **Payment Option** choice list in the Create Company Account dialog box affect payment liability: **Both**, **Company**, and **Individual**.

## How Accounting Entries for Payment Options Are Calculated

When an employee's expense report is exported to Payables, the amount of the payment request equals the amount due the employee.

The following table summarizes amounts owed by a company to an employee and the corporate card issuer based on the payment liability.

Payment Liability	Expense Report Total	Amount Due Employee	Amount Due Corporate Card Issuer
Individual Pay	1,150 USD	1,150 US	0
Both Pay	1,150 USD	500 USD	650 USD
Company Pay	1,150 USD	201 USD	949 USD

Payment Liability	Expense Report Total	Amount Due Employee	Amount Due Corporate Card Issuer
-------------------	----------------------	---------------------	----------------------------------

## Accounting Entries for Individual Pay

Since the payment option is Individual Pay, a single payment request is created to reimburse the employee. It's the employee's responsibility to pay the card issuer.

The following table describes the accounting distributions for a corporate card with Individual Pay liability.

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash and other expenses	500 USD	Not Applicable
Corporate card business expenses	650 USD	Not Applicable
Employee liability	Not Applicable	1,150 USD

## Accounting Entries for Both Pay

With Both Pay liability, two payment requests are created, one to pay the employee for any out of pocket expenses and a second one to pay the card issuer.

The following table describes the accounting distributions for a corporate card with Both Pay liability.

Account	Debit	Credit
Payment Request for Employee	500 USD	Not Applicable
Cash and other expenses		
Due to employee	Not Applicable	500 USD
Corporate card business expenses	650 USD	Not Applicable
Expenses clearing account		650 USD
Payment Request for Card Issuer	650 USD	Not Applicable
Expenses clearing account		
Due to card issuer	Not Applicable	650 USD

## Accounting Entries for Company Pay

With Company Pay liability, a company can pay the card issuer at any time. The payment request for an employee is created when an expense report is approved and processed, while the payment request for the card issuer is created separately.

The following table describes the accounting distributions for a corporate card with Company Pay liability.

Account	Debit	Credit
Payment Request for Employee	500 USD	Not Applicable
Cash and other expenses		
Corporate card business expenses	650 USD	Not Applicable
Expenses clearing account	Not Applicable	949 USD
Due to employee	Not Applicable	201 USD
Payment Request for Card Issuer	949 USD	
Expenses clearing account		
Due to card issuer	Not Applicable	949 USD


## Steps Your Administrator Takes to Receive Transaction Files from a Card Issuer

Before your company can receive transaction files from a corporate card issuer, your administrator must perform the following steps:

- Select the correct transaction file format.
- Establish file transfer connectivity.
- Test sample transaction files.

### Selecting the Correct Transaction File Format

Your company must verify that the corporate card issuer's file format is supported by Oracle Expenses. Expenses supports the following corporate card transaction file formats:

 **Note:** You can no longer load files that contain full card numbers. Card numbers must be masked or tokenized according to the format.


- American Express GL1025 Card Number Disguising Format
- American Express GL1080 Card Number Disguising Format
- Diner's Club Standard Data File format with Tokens
- MasterCard Common Data Format, version 3.0 (CDF 3.0) Masked
- Visa VCF4 Format with Tokens

Corporate card issuers require your company to provide organizational hierarchy information that they set up in their system to satisfy your reporting and billing needs. The organizational hierarchy associates the corporate cards issued to your employees with the appropriate organizations within your company.

Corporate card issuers can provide your company with a single file that contains all company transactions or a separate transaction file for each organizational hierarchy. Expenses processes both types of transactions files. To obtain the appropriate file for your company, communicate your preference to the corporate card issuer.

## Establishing File Transfer Connectivity

Work with your card issuer to determine the secure file transfer method that meets your company's security requirements. A secure connection between the card issuer and your company is required to receive the transaction file from the card issuer's server. To process the transaction files, Expenses must have read access to the directory location in which the transaction files are stored.

 **Note:** For American Express files, Expenses supports automatic download of corporate card transaction files from the American Express server.

## Testing Sample Transaction Files

The corporate card issuer provides your company with transactions file format specifications and sample test files applicable to your company. Work with your card issuer to identify transactions that you want to include in the test files and the number of test files required.

 **Note:** Before you can test the sample transaction files, you must complete the corporate card program setup.

If you automatically assign newly created corporate cards to company accounts based on your setup within the card issuer's system, then you must set up the company account with the following:


- Company account number
- Card issuer number
- Processor-assigned number
- Market code
- Billing control account number based on your card brand

If you don't plan to automatically assign newly created cards, then you must create one company account per business unit that pays the card issuer. The application then assigns the corporate card to a company account that is defined for the business unit of the employee.

If you do plan to automatically assign corporate cards to company accounts based on your setup within the card issuer's system, you must set up data on the Create Corporate Card Program page.

To test the card issuer's sample transaction files, copy the data from the sample transaction files into the applicable fields on the Create Corporate Card Program page. To do this, use the data from the sample transaction files to identify what to enter on the Create Corporate Card Program page.

The following table shows the location of the setup data in the card issuer's sample transaction files.

 **Tip:** Use this table with the file specification from the card issuer to locate the data in the sample transaction files.

Transaction File Format	Field Name on the Create Corporate Card Program Page	Type of Record	Data Element Name	Data Location in the Card Issuer's Transaction File	Tag
American Express GL1025 Card Number Disguising Format	Company Account Number	Type 1	Global Client Origin Identifier	5-19	N/A
	Market Code	Type 1	Market Code	2-4	N/A
		Type 8	Market Code	37-39	
Diner's Club Standard Data File Format with Tokens	Company Account Number	N/A	Link_acct	71-89	N/A
MasterCard Common Data Format, version 3.0 (CDF 3.0) Masked	Company Account Number	N/A	N/A	N/A	<CorporateEntity> <CorporationNumber>
	Card Issuer Number	N/A	N/A	N/A	<IssuerEntity> <IssuerNumber>
	Processor-Assigned Number	N/A	N/A	N/A	<IssuerEntity> <ICANumber>
Visa VCF4 Format with Tokens	Company Account Number	Block Header	Company Identification	Field #2	N/A
	Card Issuer Number	Block Header	Issuer Identification Number	Field #9	N/A
	Processor-Assigned Number	Block Header	Processor Identification Number	Field #10	N/A

You can use the following table with the file specification from the card issuer to locate employee numbers in the charge files.

Transaction File Format	Type of Record	Data Element Name	Data Location in Card Issuer's File	Tag
American Express GL1025 Card Number Disguising Format	Type 1	Employee ID	328 to 342	N/A
MasterCard Common Data Format, version 3.0 (CDF 3.0) Masked	N/A	N/A	N/A	<EmployeeId> in <AccountInformation_4300>

Transaction File Format	Type of Record	Data Element Name	Data Location in Card Issuer's File	Tag
Visa VCF4 Format with Tokens	Card Account (Type 3)	Cardholder Identification	Field #2	N/A
Visa VCF4 Format with Tokens	Cardholder (Type 4)	Cardholder Identification	Field #3	N/A
Visa VCF4 Format with Tokens	Cardholder (Type 4)	Employee ID	Field #23	N/A

## Options for Creating Corporate Cards

You can create corporate cards in two ways. You can choose either of the following actions at different points in time or you can do both at the same time:

- Automatic corporate card creation
- Manual corporate card creation

### Automatic Corporate Card Creation

Automatic corporate card creation applies only to corporate cards that are issued to employees and used primarily for travel expenses. New employees are typically given new corporate cards, but the information on the cards isn't manually entered into the application at that time.

You can create corporate cards automatically by selecting an employee matching rule for new cards on the Upload Rules tab of the Create Corporate Card Program page. Then, when the corporate card transaction file containing transactions for the new card is uploaded to Expenses for the first time, the corporate card transaction upload and validation process uses the matching rule to match the new corporate card to the new employee.

Using the specified employee matching rule, the application automatically enters the transaction data for the new corporate card and associates it with the applicable employee. If the employee matching rule fails to identify a match, the application leaves the corporate card unassigned.

 **Tip:** To reduce or eliminate manual effort, automatic corporate card creation is recommended.

### Employee Matching Scenarios

Any of these employee matching scenarios can occur for any corporate card brand when the first transaction for a new card comes in:

- Company account information on the transaction matches the company account information in the application.  
The application searches and identifies an employee in the business unit of your company account.
- Company account information on the transaction matches the company account information in the application.  
The application searches and doesn't identify an employee in the business unit of your company account.



If the **Perform employee matching across all business units** check box is selected, the application searches all other business units and identifies an employee match.


- The company account in the application has no information, such as company account number, billing control account, or card issuer number.

If no setup data exists, the application matches across business units, identifies the employee and the employee's business unit, and associates the corporate card to a company account in the same business unit.

## Manual Corporate Card Creation

You can manually create corporate cards for employees in the **Create Corporate Card** dialog box where you enter the following data:

- Corporate card program
- Company account name
- Token or masked card number
- Employee name and number
- Expiration date
- Maximum amount per transaction: Applicable for procurement cards only
- Maximum amount per billing period: Applicable for procurement cards only

 **Note:** Manual creation of corporate cards is the exception, rather than the rule. Corporate cards are company account-specific. For example, if an employee transfers to another organization within your company and the organization belongs to another company account, you must create the corporate card again with the applicable company account name.

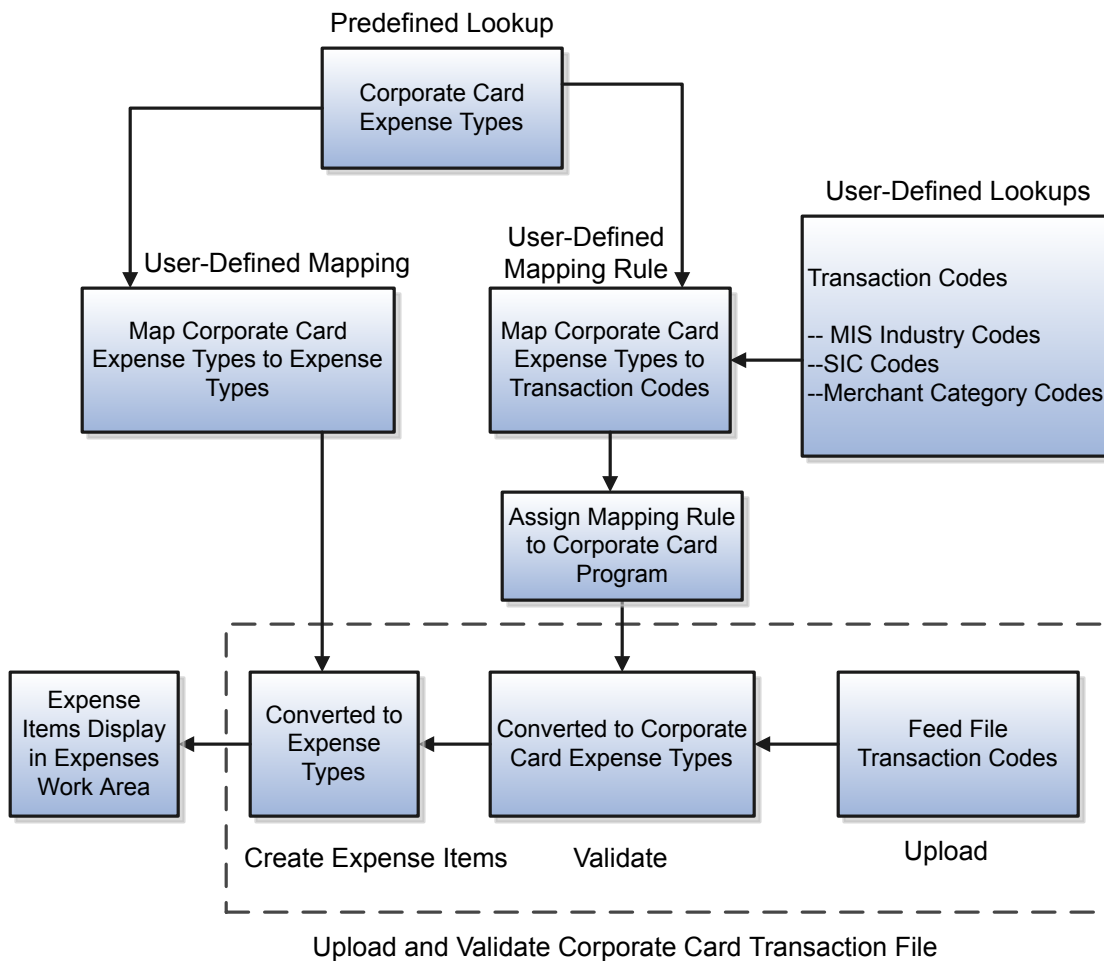
## Mapping Rules

The corporate card expense type mapping rule is a correspondence between the transaction code in the card feed file and the predefined card expense type. This linkage enables the application to automatically populate expense types for transactions in the expense report.

To automatically produce expense types in expense reports, you must perform the following steps:

1. Define corporate card feed file transaction codes as lookup types.
2. Map predefined corporate card expense types to feed file transaction codes.
3. Assign the mapping rule to the corporate card program.
4. Map predefined corporate card expense types to user-defined expense types in the default expense template for each business unit.

This figure shows the setup to automatically produce expense types in expense reports, in conjunction with uploading and validating corporate card transaction files. Ultimately, expense items are displayed in the Expenses work area.



## Define Feed File Transaction Codes

Corporate card issuers provide the transaction codes for each transaction in a corporate card feed file. These transaction codes, whether MIS Industry Codes, SIC Codes, or merchant category codes, must be set up in the application as lookups. Oracle Fusion Expenses provides predefined lookup types so you can define these transaction codes.

## Map Corporate Card Expense Types to Transaction Codes

Expenses provides predefined corporate card expense types in a single lookup type. This lookup type can be configured to include your company's specific expense types. Then you must associate the predefined corporate card expense types with the corporate card transaction codes. This association is known as a mapping rule.

## Assign Mapping Rule to Corporate Card Program

To enable the upload process to use the correct mapping rule, you must assign a mapping rule to the corporate card program. You can set up multiple mapping rules to automatically produce expense types into expense reports for either of the following:

- Summary transactions, known as eFolio or Level 2
- Detail transactions, known as Level 3

## Map Corporate Card Expense Types to Expense Types


To automatically produce expense types into expense reports, you must perform a final setup. In the expense template, you associate the predefined corporate card expense types with your user-defined expense types. The upload process uses the default expense template mapping for the transaction's business unit to derive the expense type that's displayed for the card expense.

## Wait Days

Using Oracle Fusion Expenses, you can hold the main corporate card transactions from use until the detail corporate card transactions arrive. This ensures that employees can include the itemization detail provided by the card issuer in their expense reports.

Two types of wait days control the maximum duration that the application waits for the detail transactions to arrive:

- Transaction detail wait days
- Merchant wait days

 **Note:** Wait days are applicable only when the merchant provides Level 3 detail transaction data. No wait period is applicable for transactions from merchants who don't provide transaction detail.

## Transaction Detail Wait Days

Transaction detail wait days are the number of days the application is set up to hold the main transaction data while waiting for detail transaction data from a merchant. Detail transaction data may or may not arrive.

You can set a wait period at the corporate card program level by selecting a value from the Transaction Detail Wait Days choice list on the Upload Rules tab of the Create Corporate Card Program page. If defined, the application uses the smaller value between the transaction detail wait days and the merchant wait days as the wait period for the main transactions.


## Merchant Wait Days

Merchant wait days are calculated by the application. It's the difference, in days, between receiving the main transactions and receiving detail transactions when they arrive for the first time. Thereafter, merchant wait days are computed as follows:

- Detail Transactions Arrival Date minus Main Transactions Arrival Date plus Most Recent Merchant Wait Days for the Main Transactions Upload divided by two.

A merchant can provide detail transactions either with the main transactions or as a separate delivery. If they're provided as a separate delivery, the Upload Corporate Card Transaction File process holds the main transactions for a specified time period

while waiting for the detail transactions. During this wait period, the main transactions aren't available for expense reports. After each delivery of detail transactions, the merchant's wait days are updated by the application according to the preceding formula.

 **Note:** The actual time that data arrives isn't a factor in the merchant wait days or in the application's wait days' calculation.

The following table shows the calculations associated with detail transactions and merchant wait days based on transaction data arrival dates using sample data. The table data is based on a transaction detail wait days setting of five days.

Data Upload	Main Transactions Arrival Date	Detail Transactions Arrival Date	Merchant Wait Days	Application Transaction Wait Days	Latest Date Transactions are Available in Expense Report	Actual Date Transactions are Available in Expense Report
			First Time: Detail transactions arrival date minus main transactions arrival date  Thereafter, detail transactions arrival date minus main transactions arrival date plus most recent merchant wait days for the main transactions upload divided by 2.	Application uses the minimum of transaction detail wait days or merchant wait days for the main transactions upload plus 1 day.	Date the transaction detail wait days end.	Actual date the main and detail transactions are available in the expense report.
Main Transactions 1	May 1	N/A	N/A	0 Days	May 1	May 1
			The merchant has never provided detail transactions. Therefore no merchant wait days exist in the application.	The merchant didn't provide details transactions. Therefore the application doesn't wait.	Available immediately.	Available immediately.
Detail Transactions 1	N/A	May 5	4 Days	N/A	N/A	May 5
Main Transactions 2	May 7	N/A	4 Days	5 Days	May 11	N/A
			Previously calculated merchant wait days.	The application waits for the minimum of 5 transaction detail wait days or 4 merchant wait days plus 1 day.	May 7 + 5 application wait days = May 12.	

Data Upload	Main Transactions Arrival Date	Detail Transactions Arrival Date	Merchant Wait Days	Application Transaction Wait Days	Latest Date Transactions are Available in Expense Report	Actual Date Transactions are Available in Expense Report
Detail Transactions 2	N/A	May 9	3 Days  (May 9 minus May 7) +4 /2.	N/A	N/A	May 9
Main Transactions 3	May 12	N/A	3 Days  Previously calculated merchant wait days.	4 Days  The application waits for the minimum of 5 transaction detail wait days or 3 merchant wait days plus 1 day.	May 15  May 12 + 4 application wait days = May 16.	N/A

## Travel Card Processing

Travel cards, also known as centrally-billed travel cards, business travel accounts, or ghost cards, are used by companies to centrally charge high value travel expenses, such as airfare, accommodations, and car rental. The travel card account allows corporate employees to purchase travel expenses using a single card account, rather than each employee using individual corporate cards. A centrally-billed card is a single card number that is assigned to an entire company or to a specific business unit.

Your company can realize the following benefits from using a travel card account:

- Greater visibility into total trip cost
- Accurate travel expense allocation
- On time payment to card issuers
- Integration with American Express
- Cost savings

Processing travel cards includes the following actions:

- Schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process.
- View upload results.
- Schedule the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process.
- View payment requests results.

## Schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transactions Process

The Upload Corporate Card Transactions process uploads and validates corporate card or travel card transactions from a card issuer.

To schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process, navigate to: **Navigator > Expenses > Corporate Cards link > Tasks link > Upload Corporate Card Transactions link > Upload Corporate Card Transactions page.**

The following table contains the parameters that you must select on the Upload Corporate Card Transactions page to schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process.

Parameters	Option
Process Type	Upload and validate
Corporate Card Program	Applicable travel card
Account Type choice list	Centrally-billed card

## View Upload Results

View upload results in the Corporate Cards work area on the Transactions Upload Results tab. The upload results display the status of the process, output, and any invalid transaction errors. You can click the **View Output** icon and the link for the number of invalid transactions to review details and take corrective action.

## Schedule the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests Process

The Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process creates invoices for subsequent payment to corporate card or travel card issuers.

To schedule the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process, navigate to: **Navigator > Expenses > Corporate Cards link > Tasks link > Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests link > Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests page.**

The following table contains the parameters that you must select on the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests page to schedule the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process.


Parameters	Option
Corporate Card Program	Travel card
Account Type choice list	Centrally-billed card

## View Payment Requests Results

View payment requests results in the Corporate Cards work area on the Card Issuer Payment Requests tab. The payment requests results display the status of the process, as well as output. You can click the **View Output** icon to review details and take corrective action.

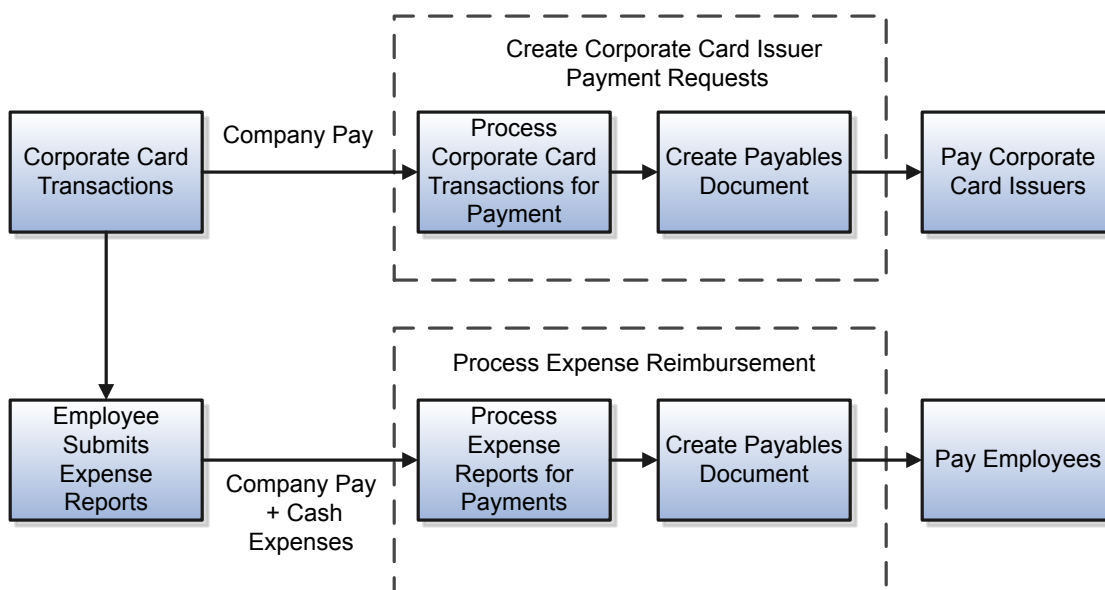
## How Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests for Company Pay Transactions Are Processed

You can run the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process to generate payment requests for corporate card issuers when there are corporate cards that use the Company Pay payment option. The Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process is run only when the Company Pay payment option is used.

 **Note:** You can run the process any time. Since your company's objective is to pay the card issuer on time, running the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process isn't dependent on when an employee submits an expense report.

This following figure shows how the:


- Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process generates payment requests to pay corporate card issuers when corporate cards use the Company Pay payment option.
- Process Expense Reimbursement process generates payment requests to pay employees when corporate cards use the Company Pay Plus Cash payment option.



## Settings That Affect Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests for Company Pay Transactions

Settings that affect payment requests for Company Pay transactions are the following:

- **Employee Liability Account:** Set up as a system option on the Edit Expenses System Options page.

 **Note:** To use the Payables default liability account, select the **Use setup from Oracle Fusion Payables** option. To define a specific liability account that is specific to a business unit, select the **Define value specific to business unit** option and then enter an account. This account is used only if there are cash expenses in the expense report and reimbursement is due to the employee.

- **Corporate Card Issuer Payment Liability Account:** Set up in Oracle Fusion Payables.

This account records the amount the company reimburses corporate card issuers for expenses incurred by employees who use their corporate cards.

- **Expense Clearing Account** and **Payment Option:** Set up in the **Create Company Account** dialog box.

This account temporarily holds accounting for corporate card transactions. It's cleared when the expense reports containing the corporate card transactions are processed by Payables.

## How Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests for Company Pay Transactions Are Processed

The Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process has the following components:

- Populate Payables Open Invoice Interface tables
- Create corporate card issuer payment requests
- Handle processed and rejected expense reports

### Populating Payables Open Invoice Interface Tables

For each corporate card, the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process creates one invoice header record in the Payables Open Invoice Interface table. All corporate card transactions for the corporate card are created as child lines. The accounting distributions for the transactions are created using the Expense Clearing Account for the corporate card.

### Creating Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests

After populating the Payables Open Invoice Interface table, the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process invokes the Import Payables Invoices process in Payables. Payables creates payment requests using the information in the Payables Open Invoice Interface table. Tax processing isn't applicable for corporate card issuer payment requests.

### Handling Processed and Rejected Expense Reports

During payment request creation, Payables rejects records in the Payables Open Invoice Interface table if errors exist, such as dates in closed accounting periods or invalid payment methods. After payment requests creation is complete, the Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process removes any rejected records from the interface table. You must then reprocess the corporate card transactions for reimbursement.

Finally, all expense items corresponding to the corporate card transactions, for which payment requests are created, are updated with a corresponding payment request identifier.



The following table describes the types of payment options for corporate card transactions in expense reports and the processes that are run to generate their associated payment requests.

Expense Report Payment Options for Corporate Card Transactions	Process Run	Payment Requests Created
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cash</li> <li>Company Pay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employee Payment Requests</li> <li>Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Individual Pay</li> <li>Company Pay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employee Payment Requests</li> <li>Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cash</li> <li>Individual Pay</li> <li>Company Pay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employee Payment Requests</li> <li>Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Both Pay</li> <li>Company Pay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cash</li> <li>Both Pay</li> <li>Company Pay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employee Payment Requests</li> <li>Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Individual Pay</li> <li>Both Pay</li> <li>Company Pay</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employee Payment Requests</li> <li>Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>
Company Pay only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements</li> <li>Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests</li> </ul>	Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests

#### Related Topics

- [How Expense Report Payment Requests Are Processed](#)

## How Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees Are Processed

Your company can settle inactive employees' accounts with a card issuer in a timely manner. You can grant managers permission to submit their inactive employees' unpaid corporate card transactions in expense reports. You can process corporate card transactions for inactive employees by running either of the following processes from the Corporate Cards work area:

- Upload Corporate Card Transactions
- Process Corporate Cards Transactions for Inactive Employees

Navigate to Corporate Cards work area: **Navigator > Corporate Cards link > Overview page** or **Navigator >Tools > Scheduled Processes**.

An inactive employee is a person who was terminated or who is on unpaid leave. Examples include:


- Military leave
- Extended medical leave
- Educational leave

## Settings That Affect Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees

No prerequisites or setup is required to process corporate card transactions for inactive employees.

The corporate card transaction processes for inactive employees are relevant for Both Pay and Company Pay transactions only. For Both Pay transactions, your company pays the corporate card issuer for business expenses and the employee pays the corporate card issuer for personal expenses. Company Pay transactions are those where your company pays the corporate card issuer for all corporate card transactions incurred by its employees. The employee is reimbursed only for cash business expenses.

The following table describes selected parameters for the Process Corporate Cards Transactions for Inactive Employees process.

Parameters	Description
Number of Days	<p>Value used by the application that represents an interval of time, which the application uses to determine whether corporate card transactions for inactive employees exist.</p> <p>The default value for Number of Days is one. However, you can adjust this value depending on how frequently your company updates information about terminated and inactive employees.</p> <p>If your company updates employee information infrequently, the value for Number of Days should be greater than one.</p> <p> <b>Tip:</b> A large value for Number of Days may impact performance. It's advisable to update your employee data frequently and enter a small value for Number of Days.</p>
Business Unit	<p>Unit of an enterprise in a management hierarchy that performs one or multiple business functions. The process named Process Corporate Cards Transactions for Inactive Employees runs for the business unit identified by this parameter.</p>

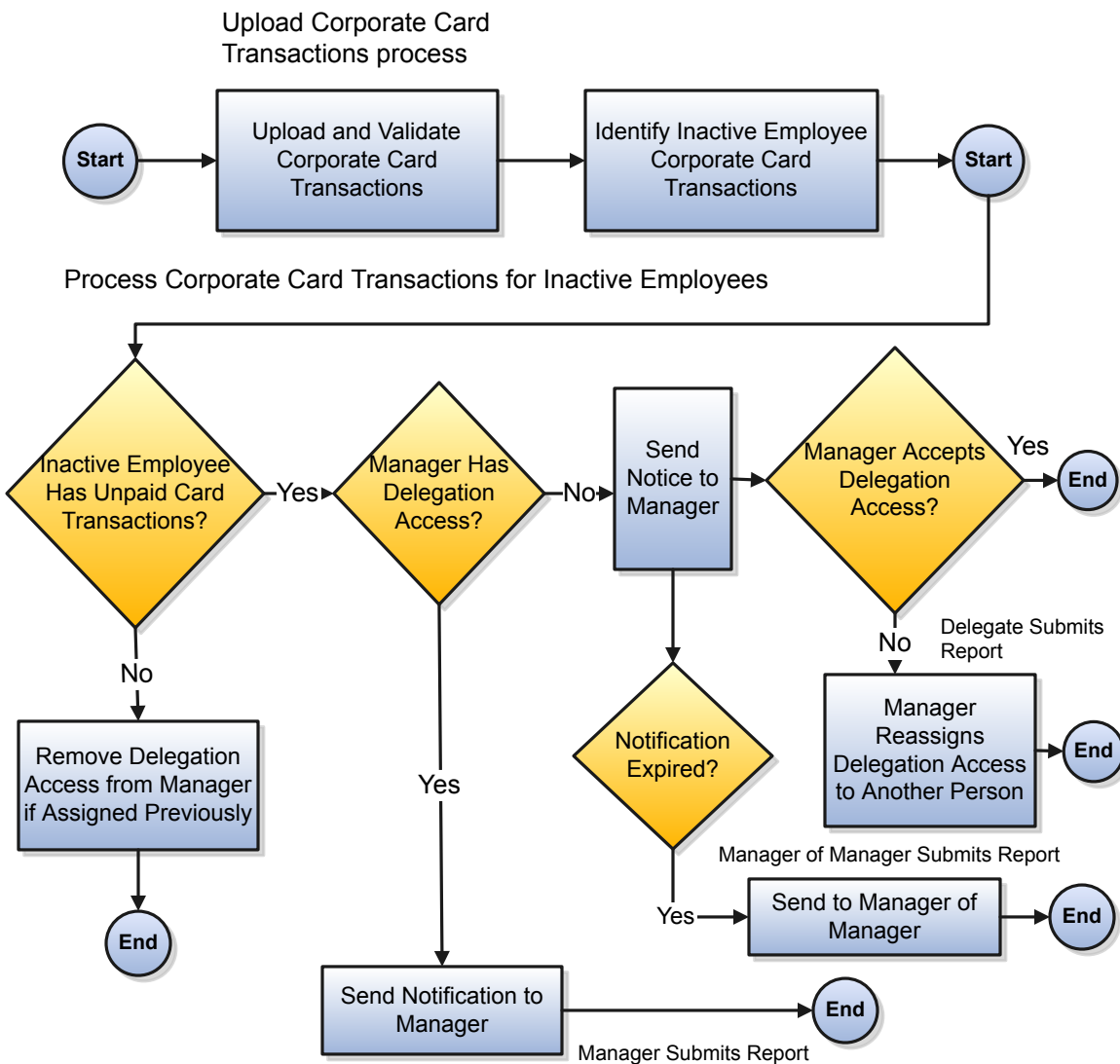
## How Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees are Processed

The figure shows the different starting points of the following processes:

- Upload Corporate Card Transactions

- Process Inactive Employees' Corporate Card Transactions

### Inactive Employee Processing Flow




To run the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process from the Corporate Cards work area, click the **Upload Corporate Card Transactions** link in the Tasks list. First, this process validates and uploads corporate card transactions to Expenses. Second, if the process identifies unpaid corporate card transactions for an inactive employee, the process called Process Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees initiates.

After Process Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees is initiated and unpaid card transactions are found, a notification is sent to the inactive employee's manager.

If the direct manager doesn't have delegation, he receives a notification. The notification informs him that corporate card transactions exist for an inactive employee. He can either accept delegation or reassign it to another person.

If no unpaid corporate card transactions exist for an inactive employee, then delegation is removed from the manager if it was assigned previously.

If the direct manager already has delegation, he receives a notification, informing him that corporate card transactions exist for an inactive employee. The manager can then submit the unpaid corporate card transactions in an expense report on behalf of the inactive employee.

 **Note:** If a person other than the inactive employee's manager accepts delegation, every subsequent notification is sent to both the inactive employee's manager and the delegate.

When unpaid card transactions for inactive employees are submitted in a report and are paid, delegation is removed from the manager or other designated person.

Alternatively, you can skip the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process if it's irrelevant, and run the Process Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees. To run the process, click the **Process Corporate Card Transactions for Inactive Employees** link in the Tasks list. This process is run using two parameters: the Business Unit with which the inactive employee was associated and a value for the Number of Days.

## How Downloading Corporate Card Transaction Files From American Express Are Processed

To download corporate card transaction files from American Express, you must set up Oracle Fusion Expenses to download data files in conjunction with the Upload Corporate Card Transaction File program.

 **Note:** You can only download American Express transaction files.


## Settings That Affect Downloading Corporate Card Transaction Files From American Express

Before you can download transaction files from American Express servers, you must set up a Secure File Transfer account with American Express and obtain the user name and password that identifies your customer account on the Secure File Transfer server.

To set up the transaction file transfer parameters for the American Express corporate card program, enter the values in the following table on the Transfer Parameters tab on the Create Corporate Card Program page.


Parameter	Description
Download Profile Name	Name you enter to identify the download parameters.
Account Name	Name provided by American Express that identifies your customer account.

Parameter	Description
Account Password	Password for the American Express customer account.
File Name Prefix	File name prefix provided by American Express.
Server	Name of the American Express server to connect to for the transaction file download.

 **Tip:** American Express also provides a server at `fsgatewaytest.aexp.com` for transaction file transfer testing.

## How Downloading Corporate Card Transaction Files From American Express are Processed

After you complete the tasks for corporate card transaction download, you can use the Upload Corporate Card Transaction File program with the profile name as a download parameter to download corporate card transaction files from American Express.

 **Note:** American Express places one or multiple transaction files at a time in a folder called Outbox in your customer account. The Upload Corporate Card Transaction File program, however, processes only one file at a time. The process picks up the oldest file each time. To pick up multiple files, you must schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transaction File process to run multiple times.

## Upload VISA, MasterCard, and Diner's Club Corporate Card Transactions Files


Before you can process VISA, MasterCard, and Diner's Club corporate card transaction files, you must set up an HTTPS server, configure the corporate card programs setup, and verify the HTTPS server setup.

### Setting Up the HTTPS Server

When you set up the HTTPS server, ensure the following:

1. Install a web server and enable HTTPS.
  - The server must be externally accessible.
  - The server must have a valid certificate, such as Verisign.
2. Create the outbox directory on the server.
  - Create a directory called on the HTTPS server to receive corporate card transaction files.
  - Secure the directory with a user name and password.


- Enable the directory so it's visible to external users who have read access.

 **Note:** You must either receive corporate card transaction files directly to the directory from the card issuers or move the transaction files to this directory from an alternate location where the transaction files are initially received.

## Configuring the Corporate Card Programs Setup

To configure the corporate card programs setup, perform the following steps:

1. In the Upload Parameters section on the Create or Edit Corporate Card Programs page, do the following:
  - Create a profile with your server address, user name, and password:  
  
For example, a server address of **Vision.com/outbox** represents the path to the directory, Vision.com/outbox, that you created.
  - Enter the full file name of the corporate card transaction file in the File Name Prefix field.
2. Schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transaction Files process to automatically pull and process the transaction files.

 **Note:** The Upload Corporate Card Transactions process supports only user name and password-based authentication.


## Verifying the HTTPS Server Setup

To verify the HTTPS server setup, perform the following steps:

1. Verify that the HTTPS server has a valid certificate.
  - In your browser, enter the server address, such as **https://Vision.com/outbox**.  
  
If you don't see an error message that indicates an invalid server certificate or an mistrusted server certificate, then the certificate is correctly installed.
2. Verify that the directory is accessible and secured.
  - After navigating to the server address, such as **https://Vision.com/outbox**, if you see a login screen, then the directory is accessible and secured.
  - Sign in with user name and password to ensure that the user has access to the outbox directory.


## Enable Pretty Good Privacy (PGP) for Corporate Card Transaction Files

This topic describes how to enable PGP for Visa, MasterCard, or Diner's Club corporate card transaction files. First you create a PGP encryption certificate and provide it to the card issuer. Using the PGP certificate that you provide, the card issuer encrypts your corporate card transaction files and sends them to the server that hosts the files for you. Finally, you run the Upload Corporate Card Transaction File process, which decrypts the files in memory and processes the transactions.

 **Note:** PGP encryption isn't applicable to American Express.

## Prerequisites

To receive files directly from Visa, MasterCard, or Diner's Club, you must set up an HTTPS or SFTP server at your site or with a third party. Alternatively, you can set up an HTTPS or SFTP server at the card issuer's site so it can host your corporate card transaction files.

 **Note:** Oracle Expenses Cloud doesn't allow card issuers to directly push corporate card transaction files to your Cloud environment.


## Creating a PGP Encryption Certificate

To create a PGP encryption certificate for uploading corporate card transactions files, perform the following steps:

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user with the IT Security Manager role.
2. From the Springboard, navigate to: **Tools > Security Console**.
3. Select the Certificates tab.
4. Click the **Generate** button to open the Generate page.
5. From Certificate Type, select the PGP option.
6. In the Alias field, enter **EXM\_PGP\_KEY**.

 **Note:** The alias you enter must exactly match **EXM\_PGP\_KEY**.

7. In the **Passphrase** field, enter a password.

 **Caution:** Store the password in a safe location. If you need to delete this certificate in the future, the password is required.

8. From the Key Algorithm choice list, select the algorithm that you want to use.

 **Note:** A 256 bit algorithm isn't supported.

9. From the Key Length choice list, select the length that you want to use.
10. Click the **Save and Close** button.

## Exporting a PGP Encryption Certificate

To export the PGP encryption certificate to your card issuer, perform the following steps:

1. On the Certificates page, select the EXM\_PGP\_KEY row, and click the down arrow to open actions available for this certificate.
2. Select **Export > Public Key**.
3. Save the public key file.
4. Provide the public key file to your card issuer.

 **Note:** Using the public key, your card issuer must encrypt your corporate card transactions files.

## Verifying Encrypted Files


Contact the card issuer to verify that the files are encrypted.

## Processing Encrypted Transaction Files

Run or schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transaction File process. The process uses the alias, EXM\_PGP\_KEY, decrypts the corporate card transaction files, and processes the transactions.

# Set Up to Receive American Express GL1025 Tokenized Files

Your company can receive and process American Express GL1025 files with card disguising numbers, also known as tokenized GL1025 files. Card disguising numbers, or token numbers, are random numbers generated by American Express that are used in place of valid card numbers. The token numbers remain the same throughout the life of the cards. Using tokenized GL1025 files eliminates storage of full card numbers and lets you use the American Express remittance process, Global Remittance Utility.

 **Note:** Only American Express GL1025 files support tokenization. You can no longer load files that contain full card numbers.

To receive tokenized GL1025 files from American Express, you must:

- Set up your company in American Express
- Set up your company in Expenses
- Upload tokenized files

## Setting Up Your Company in American Express

To receive tokenized GL1025 files instead of standard GL1025 files, contact American Express through your AMEX representative. You must decide and inform American Express of the following:

- Regions, territories, or countries for which you want to receive tokenized files
- Mailbox or user account where you want to receive tokenized GL1025 files on the American Express production server
- File prefix: A unique file prefix that identifies your GL1025 files in the American Express folder. The file prefix is mutually agreed to by you and American Express.
- Mailbox or user account where you want to receive test files

American Express lets you use production files for testing. It can place production files on the AMEX production server or the test server. Notify American Express of your server preference for testing.

After American Express sets up your company for tokenized GL1025 files, you can start testing in Expenses.




## Setting Up Your Company in Expenses

To receive tokenized GL1025 files, you must create a card program with tokenization enabled by performing the following steps:

1. Sign in to Expenses as a corporate card administrator.
2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Corporate Card Programs
3. Click the Create icon.
4. On the Create Corporate Card Program page, perform the following steps:
  - a. In the **Name** field, enter a name for your corporate card program.
  - b. From the Card Type choice list, select **Travel**.
  - c. From the Card Brand choice list, select **American Express**.
  - d. Select the Upload Rules tab.
  - e. In the File Format field, **American Express GL1025** is read-only.
  - f. From the Card Number Format choice list, select **Token**.
  - g. Select the Transfer Parameters tab.
  - h. Transfer parameters define the connection details between Expenses and American Express.
  - i. Click the **Create** icon to open the **Create Transfer Parameter** dialog box.
    - i. In the **Download Profile Name** field, enter meaningful values to identify the connection details. For example, if you are creating the connection details for connecting to the American Express test server, you might enter AMEX Test.
    - ii. In the **Account Name** field, enter the user name of the mailbox where GL1025 files are placed.
    - iii. In the **Account Password** field, enter a password for your mailbox.
    - iv. In the **File Name Prefix** field, enter your prefix for the GL1025 files. The Upload Corporate Card Transactions process processes files with this prefix.
    - v. In the **Server** field, enter the name of the American Express server where your mailbox exists. GL1025 files are always placed in the outbox folder as follows:
      - a. fsgatewaytest.aexp.com for test server
      - b. fsgateway.aexp.com for production server
  - vi. Click **Save and Close**.
5. In the Company Accounts section, click on the **Create** icon to open the **Create Company Account** dialog box.
  - a. In the **Company Account Name** field, enter the name of your company account with American Express.
  - b. Optionally, enter values that American Express provides to your company in the following fields:
    - **Company Account Number**
    - **Market Code**
    - **Requesting Control Account Number**
  - c. From the Card Issuer choice list, select the name of the company that is issuing the American Express card to its employees.

- d. From the Card Issuer Site choice list, select the site of the company that is issuing the American Express card to its employees.
- e. From the Payables Business Unit choice list, select the Oracle Payables business unit that reimburses employees for corporate card charges.
- f. From the Payment Currency choice list, select the three-letter code that represents the currency in which reimbursements are made.
- g. From the Payment Option choice list, select the option that determines whether your company, its employees, or a combination of the two are responsible for paying the credit card issuer.
- h. Remittance Details section: Captures additional parameters for the generation of remittance advice. Remittance advice is a file that provides the amount paid by your company to American Express by credit card number. The Global Remittance Utility uses the tokenized card number instead of the real card number.
- i. In the **Book Number** field, enter the financial accounting identifier used in the US and Canada for American Express
- j. In the **Load Number** field, enter the sender identifier in a remittance file that is transmitted to American Express. This identifier is provided by American Express.
- k. From the Card Issuer Country Code choice list, select the applicable two-letter country code.
- l. In the **Card Disguising Control Account Number** field, enter the control account for the token numbers.

 **Caution:** If you currently receive standard GL1025 files, you can convert your existing card program to a tokenized program. However, you should not create a new card program because all cards will be recreated by the new card program.

## Uploading Tokenized Files

Uploading and processing tokenized GL1025 files is exactly the same as the standard GL1025 files. The process creates tokenized cards and matches them to employees if employee numbers are provided in the GL1025 files. Employee numbers in the GL1025 files must match person numbers in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management.

To upload tokenized files, perform the following steps:

1. Manually run or schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process from the Corporate Cards work area.
2. Review the upload results in the Corporate Cards work area and correct any errors.
3. On the Review Corporate Card Transactions page, review unassigned cards and assign them to the correct employees. On this page, you can see the tokenized card numbers, not the real card numbers.

All corporate card processes support tokenized cards. This includes the following processes:

- Manage Historical Corporate Card Transactions process
- Create Corporate Card Issuer Payment Requests process

## Enable Tokenization for Visa VCF4 Files

Oracle Expenses accepts Visa VCF4 files that are tokenized. Visa tokens can include numbers and characters.

To enable tokenization for Visa VCF4 files, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, select:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses

- Task: Manage Corporate Card Programs

2. On the Manage Corporate Card Programs page, click the + (Create) icon.
3. On the Create Corporate Card Program page in the **Name** field, enter a name for your Visa corporate card program.
4. From the Card Type choice list, select **Procurement** or **Travel**.
5. From the Card Brand choice list, select **Visa**.

On the Upload Rules tab, the File Format label shows **Visa VCF4** as read-only.

6. From the Card Number Format choice list, select **Token**.
7. Click **Save and Close**.

## Simplified Configuration for MasterCard CDF3 and Visa VCF4 Files

You can set up your company account with MasterCard under a single company account number globally. This simplified configuration supports corporate card transaction files that are generated for multiple entities in your company under a single company account number. The same setup is also available for Visa card programs.

To simplify your company account setup on the Create Company Account dialog box, you're not required to enter values for these fields:

- Company Account Number
- Card Issuer Number
- Processor-Assigned Number

For added convenience, if your company accounts aren't set up so they correspond to business units, the application can perform employee matching across all business units. This matching occurs when a transaction in a charge file matches a company account based on the information that came in the transaction, but the employee number isn't in the same business unit. To match employee transactions across business units, select the **Perform employee matching across all business units** check box on the Create Corporate Card Program page, File Details section, Upload Rules tab.

When you run the Upload Corporate Card Transaction Files process, it uploads and validates your corporate card transactions files.

### *Related Topics*

- [How You Upload Corporate Card Transactions with Encrypted Card Numbers](#)

## Upload American Express Non-Financial Transactions

To upload American Express non-financial transactions, you must create the lookup type EXM\_CC\_AMEX\_NF\_FEES. Non-financial transactions are transactions where the MIS transaction code is NF in the corporate card transactions file. Examples of non-financial transactions include a membership rewards annual fee and a membership reinstatement fee.

Create the lookup type EXM\_CC\_AMEX\_NF\_FEES with its associated lookup codes.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use:
  - Offering: Financials

- Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Standard Lookups
- 2. On the Manage Standard Lookups page in the **Search Results** section, click the **New** icon.
- 3. In the **Lookup Type** field, enter **EXM\_CC\_AMEX\_NF\_FEES**.
- 4. In the **Meaning** field, enter an applicable meaning.
- 5. In the **Description** field, enter an applicable description.
- 6. From the Module choice list, search and select **Expenses**.
- 7. Click **Save**.
- 8. In the EXM\_CC\_AMEX\_NF\_FEES: Lookup Codes section, add lookup codes for each of the non-financial transactions that you would like to load.
- 9. In the **Lookup Code** field, enter a code that represents the name of the lookup code, such as NF\_MEMRWDS.
- 10. In the **Meaning** field, you must enter the same description you receive in the feed, such as MEM RWDS ANNUAL PROG.
- 11. In the **Description** field, enter a description for the lookup code meaning, such as Membership Rewards Annual Fee.
- 12. Click **Save and Close**.
- 13. Schedule the Upload Corporate Card Transactions process to load the American Express non-financial transactions.

## Set Up Remittance Advice for American Express Tokenized GL1025 Files

If your company uses American Express tokenized GL1025 files, you can use the American Express remittance format, Global Remittance Utility, to generate remittance advice. The typical company scenario unfolds when employees use American Express corporate cards for business expenses and then submit expense reports. After expense report approval, Oracle Payables pays the American Express invoice by making a single payment. You can optionally send a remittance file to American Express that lists employee card holders and the amounts of their respective payments.

Before you start, you must add the predefined privilege, Submit Corporate Card Remittance File, to your user account. This privilege isn't assigned to any roles out of the box.

Enable the transmission of remittance advice for American Express tokenized GL1025 files by doing these tasks:

1. Configure the predefined American Express Global Remittance Utility format.
2. Create a remittance file format.
3. Create a transmission file configuration.
4. Modify the payment process profile.
5. Submit the payment process request.
6. Run the Submit Corporate Card Remittance File process.
7. Transmit the remittance advice to American Express.

## Configure the Predefined American Express Global Remittance Utility Format

You must configure the predefined remittance advice format to reflect your company details. To configure the Global Remittance Utility format, sign in as a user with access to Reports and Analytics.

1. Sign into the Oracle BI Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
2. On the Oracle BI Publisher home page, click the Catalog menu.


3. On the Catalog page in the Folders pane, expand **Shared Folders > Financials > Payments**.
4. Locate Disbursement Corporate Credit Card Remittance Formats.
5. From the More menu, select **Customize** to create a copy of the report so you can upload a custom template.
6. In the Disbursement Corporate Credit Card Remittance Formats page, click the **Edit** link to download and save the CorporateCreditCardRemittanceFile.rtf to your local drive.
7. On your local drive, navigate to the saved RTF file and open it.
8. Locate Record Type 00 in the OutboundPaymentInstruction table.
9. At position 3, change the text in the <DATA> column to reflect your company's Global Corporate Identifier. American Express provides this value.
10. Locate Record Type 01 in the OutboundPayableLine table.
11. At position 3, change the text in the <DATA> column so it reads as follows after IF SUM:

```
(DocumentPayableLine/LineGrossAmount/Value) < 0 THEN '+' ELSE '-' END IF
```

12. At position 4, change the text in the <DATA> column so it reads as follows after ABS:

```
(ROUND (SUM (DocumentPayableLine/LineGrossAmount/Value)*100))
```

13. Starting at position 223, add the Card Disguising Number Control Account in the <DATA> column. The range of the position is from 223 to 241.

 **Note:** The Card Disguising Number may or may not be the control account that the cards belong to. Regardless, the card number disguising is set up at the control account number. All accounts below this hierarchy level are disguised.

14. Locate Record Type 02 in the OutboundPaymentInstruction table.
15. At position 85, add the payment date in the <FORMAT> column.
16. At position 85 in the <DATA> column, add **InstructionGrouping/PaymentDate**.

 **Tip:** The payment date must be on or after the payment file date.

17. Upload a copy of the modified template to Oracle BI Publisher.

## Create a Remittance File Format

To create a remittance file format, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional area: Payments
  - o Task: Manage Formats
2. On the Manage Formats page from the Select Type choice list, select **Disbursement Corporate Credit Card Remittance File**.
3. Click **Create**.
4. On the Create Format page in the **Name** field, enter a name for the remittance file format.
5. In the **Code** field, enter a code for the remittance file format.
6. From the BI Publisher Template choice list, select the template that you uploaded to BI Publisher.
7. Click **Save and Close**.

## Create a Transmission Configuration

To create a transmission configuration, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional area: Payments
  - o Task: Manage Transmission Configurations
2. On the Manage Transmission Configurations page from the Select Protocol choice list, select **Secure File Transfer Protocol for Static File Names**.
3. Click **Create**.
4. On the Create Transmission Configuration page in the Configuration field, enter a name for the configuration.
5. In the Value field for Sent File Name, enter GRU.<your company ID>.&REQUESTID.&PAYMENTFILEID.&DATE.
6. Obtain the necessary parameter values to enter from American Express.
7. Click **Save and Close**.


## Modify the Payment Process Profile

To modify the applicable payment process profile, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use:
  - a. Offering: Financials
  - b. Functional area: Payments
  - c. Task: Manage Payment Process Profiles
2. On the Payment File tab, select the **Payment date** check box.
3. Click **Save and Close**.

## Submit the Payment Process Request

To submit the payment process request to pay American Express, complete these steps:

 **Tip:** Make a note of the payment file reference number because you will select it later when you run the Submit Corporate Card Remittance File process to generate the remittance advice.

1. In the Oracle Payments work area, click the **Tasks** icon and click the **Submit Payment Process Request** link.
2. On the Submit Payment Process Request page, select the Selection Criteria tab, and complete the applicable fields.
3. For Pay Groups, select **Specific**.
4. In the Search and Select: Pay Group dialog box, search and select the pay group that you chose for the American Express company account when you set up the American Express card program in Oracle Expenses.  
This ensures that only invoices related to American Express will be picked up in the payment batch.
5. Select the Payment and Processing Options tab and complete the applicable fields.
6. Click **Submit**.

## Run the Submit Corporate Card Remittance File Process

Schedule or run the Submit Corporate Card Remittance File process.

1. **Navigator > Tools > Scheduled Processes**.

2. Click **Schedule New Process**.
3. In the Schedule New Process dialog box, search and select **Submit Corporate Card Remittance File**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. In the Process Details dialog box of the Submit Corporate Card Remittance File process, enter these parameter values.

Field Name	Parameter Value
Payment File choice list	Reference number of payment file that was generated when the payment was made to American Express.
Format choice list	Name of customized remittance advice format that you configured in BI Publisher.
File Sequence Number field	User-defined value. This value must be unique and entered within a day of transmission for each Global Corporate Identifier.
File Version Number field	<p>The default value is 00.</p> <p>If American Express rejects any remittance file and if you resubmit the same file, you must increment the value to 01, 02, 03 and so on to represent the new version. The latest version replaces the previous version.</p>
Transmission Configuration choice list	Transmission configuration that you set up to transmit Global Remittance Utility files to American Express.

## Transmit the Remittance Advice to American Express

In the Process Details dialog box of the Submit Corporate Card Remittance File process, click **Submit**. The remittance advice file is then automatically transmitted to American Express.

### Related Topics

- [How You Use Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise to Modify Templates for Use with Formats](#)
- [How You Set Up Transmission Configurations](#)
- [Payment Process Profiles](#)
- [How You Set Up Formats](#)

## FAQs for Credit Card Data

### What's a corporate card program?

A corporate card program is an agreement between the corporate card issuer and your company. The agreement governs the issuance of corporate cards to your employees and the payment to the card issuer. Your company can have a single card provider that provides corporate cards for your employees globally, which is referred to as a global card program. Alternatively, you can have multiple card providers that provide corporate cards for your employees based on the region and the services needed.

A corporate card program consists of one or more company accounts that represent a specific organizational hierarchy in your company. Each company account is associated with:

- A card issuing bank, known as a card issuer
- Payment terms
- Other agreements

Your company can elect to receive electronic files containing the corporate card transactions of their employees on a regular basis. The file format and method of delivery are agreed to and set up before your company processes corporate card transaction files through Oracle Fusion Expenses.

## How can I configure corporate card issuers?

You can set up a corporate card issuer through the Manage Corporate Card Issuers page. You can enter the card issuer's site information and payment information. To pay a card issuer, enter a default payment method in the Address Payment Information section on the Edit Corporate Card Issuer page. Then you associate the newly created card issuer with your company account on the Create Company Account page. By selecting a payment currency and payment terms on the Create Company Account page, you can complete the information necessary to pay the card issuer.

## How can I enforce corporate card usage policies?

Your company can set up corporate card usage rules to enforce its policies regarding the use of corporate cards. On the Manage Corporate Card Usage Policies page, you can define the allowable amount for each expense category that can be charged as a cash expense. Over this cash limit, employees are required to use their corporate cards. Employees who exceed the cash limit receive either a warning message or an error message while completing expense entry. A warning reminds employees to use the corporate card. An error prevents submission of the expense report. Expenses notifies the expense auditor and the employee's manager of the policy violations. Alternatively, if no cash limits are defined, you can submit cash expenses of any amount.

## Can corporate card administrators view full credit card numbers associated with tokenized card numbers in Expenses?

No. Corporate card administrators can't view real card number in Expenses. They can only view tokenized card numbers. To view full card numbers, you can request a GL1210 report from American Express.

## Can corporate card administrators view full credit card numbers associated with tokenized card numbers in American Express?

Yes. Tokenized card numbers are provided only for payment processing. American Express continues to display full card numbers, even if you receive tokenized card files. To view full card numbers with their associated tokens, you can request transmission of a GL1210 report to your AMEX mailbox.



## How can I prevent workers from overriding the merchant name on credit card transactions?

By creating the profile option, EXM\_DISABLE\_CC\_MERCHANT\_NAME, and setting the value to **Y**. When this occurs, the value in the **Merchant Name** field becomes read-only on the Create Expense Item page for both the web-based and the mobile application. A read-only value in the **Merchant Name** field prevents employees from changing it, which maintains data integrity.



## 3 Expense Policies and Rules

### Set Up Delegations


A delegate is a person who is authorized to perform expense entry and management of another person's expense reports. A delegation is the relationship between a delegate and the person for whom the delegate enters expense reports. By setting up delegations, you can:

- Specify a delegate who enters expense reports for one or more people.
- Specify a person, or assignment, for whom the delegate enters expense reports.
- Specify whether the delegate can change any or all accounting segments, such as company and cost center.
- Specify whether the delegate can change project or task information for project-related expenses.

### Setting Up a Delegation

To set up a delegation, follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Delegations
2. On the Manage Delegations page, click the **Create** (+) icon.
3. On the Create Delegation page in the Delegate choice list, enter or select the name of the person who will enter expense reports for one or more people.
4. From the Assignment choice list, enter or select the name of the person who is assigned to the delegate and for whom the delegate enters expense reports.
5. If the assignment already has the accounting privilege named Override expense account allocation, select the **Accounting access** check box.
6. If the assignment already has the project privilege named Allocate project expense, select the **Project access** check box.

 **Caution:** Ensure that you check whether the assignment has the accounting or the project privilege access. If you select the **Accounting access** or the **Project access** check box and the assignment doesn't already have the applicable privilege set up in the Security module, then the person is given unintended access.

#### Related Topics

- [How You Manage Delegates](#)

## How You Configure Approval Rules

Oracle Fusion Expenses supports flexible and configurable approval rules for expense report approval using the Approvals Management Extensions of the Oracle Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) suite and Oracle Business Process Management Suite (BPM). BPM provides the interface to administer the approval rules. A BPM Worklist administrator who is assigned the role of Financial Application Administrator (FUN\_FINANCIAL\_APPLICATION\_ADMINISTRATOR) can access the approval rules in the BPM Worklist.

When you submit an expense report, Expenses invokes the approval process, which prompts a set of approval rules created in AMX to build the list of approvers. Approvals Management Extensions sends approval notifications to approvers every time it receives a response to an approval notification. AMX continues sending approval notifications to the next set of approvers in the approval list until all approvals are complete.

The approval rules are managed through the Oracle BPM Worklist. Navigate to: **Setup and Maintenance > Select: Financials > Setup button > Functional Areas: Expenses > Show: All Tasks > Manage Expense Approval Rules > Oracle BPM Worklist.**

To configure or modify rules, perform the following steps:

1. In the BPM Worklist, select the Task Configuration tab.
2. From the Tasks to be configured pane, select **FinExmWorkflowExpenseApproval**.
3. Select the Assignees tab.
4. Click the **Switch to Vertical Layout** link. An approval hierarchy displays.
5. By the SoaOLabelExp rectangle, click the diamond icon and select **Go to Rule**.

The expense approval flow contains predefined rule sets with their associated approvers as described in the following table:

Rule Set	Approval by
ExpenseReportRuleSet	Supervisor
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CustomSerialParticipantRuleSet</li><li>• CustomParallelParticipantRuleSet</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Additional serial approval rules for configuration</li><li>• Additional parallel approval rules for configuration</li></ul>
CostCenterRuleSet	Cost center owners in parallel mode
ProjectManagerRuleSet	Project managers in parallel mode
ExpenseRuleSet	A specialist based on expense types in parallel mode
SerialCostCenterRuleSet	Cost center owners in serial mode
SerialProjectManagerRuleSet	Project managers in serial mode
SerialExpenseRuleSet	A specialist based on expense types in serial mode

## ExpenseReportRuleSet: Approval by Supervisor

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports using the supervisory hierarchy is called ExpenseReportRuleSet. The predefined rules include the following:

- Approval by the immediate supervisor of expense reports with a report total over 1000
- Automatic response for all expense reports with a report total equal to or less than 1000

You can change the predefined rules, delete, or add rules as needed. The following table lists the parameters for the ExpenseReportRuleSet rule set.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
ExpenseReportManagerApprovalRule	Condition	Task. payload. getExpenseReportVOResponse. result. expenseReportTotal	Attribute that stores the expense report total in the reimbursement currency.
	List Builder	Supervisory	The rule uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Number of levels	1	Number of supervisory levels required for approval completion.
	Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getManager("supervisory"Task. creator -1,"","")	Person for whom the expense report is created.
	Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal("FINUSER30"-1,"","")	Last approver in the approval chain. Approval doesn't go beyond this participant in a hierarchy. To use this rule as is, you must change the predefined last approver user name to the last approver in your organization.
	Auto Action Enabled	False	Automatic approval action is disabled.
ExpenseReportAutoApprovalRule	Auto Action	Null	No automatic approval action.
	Condition	Task. payload. getExpenseReportVOResponse. result. expenseReportTotal	Attribute that stores the expense report total in the reimbursement currency.
	List Builder	Supervisory	The rule uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Number of levels	1	Number of supervisory levels required for approval completion.
	Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal("workflowsystem"-1,""," report is created.	Person for whom the expense report is created.
	Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal(Task. creator-1","")	Person for whom the expense report is submitted.
	Auto Action Enabled	True	Automatic approval is enabled.
	Auto Action	Approve	The response is set to Approve.
ExpenseReportInactiveEmployeeMar Condition		Task. payload. employeeInActive	Attribute that stores the condition.
	List Builder	Supervisory	The rule uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Number of levels	1	Number of supervisory levels required for approval completion.
	Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal(Task. payload. startingParticipant-1,"","")	Person for whom the expense report is created.
	Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal("FINUSER30"-1,"","")	Last approver in the approval chain. Approval doesn't go beyond this participant in a hierarchy. To use this rule as is, you must change the predefined last approver user name to the last approver in your organization.
	Auto Action Enabled	False	Automatic approval action is disabled.
	Auto Action	null	No automatic approval action. OR The response is set to Approve.

**Additional Serial Approval Rules for Configuration:** This is an additional predefined rule set for serial approval called `CustomSerialParticipantRule`. This rule set doesn't contain any predefined rules. You can use this rule set for any additional combination of approval rules that needs to be executed sequentially with respect to the rules in `ExpenseReportRuleSet`.

**Additional Parallel Approval Rules for Configuration:** This is an additional predefined rule set for parallel approval called `CustomParallelParticipantRule`. This rule set doesn't contain any predefined rules. You can use this rule set for any additional combination of approval rules that needs to be executed in parallel to the rules in `ExpenseReportRuleSet`.

## ProjectManagerRuleSet: Approval by Project Managers in Parallel Mode

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports by project managers is called `ProjectManagerRuleSet`. This rule set has a single predefined rule. The rule says that if the total amount charged to projects is greater than zero, the expense report is sent to the project manager for approval. Additionally, if expenses are charged to more than one project, the applicable project managers receive the approval notification in parallel. The approval is complete when all project managers identified as approvers have approved the expense report.

You can change the predefined rules, delete, or add rules as needed. The following table lists the parameters for the `ProjectManagerRuleSet` rule set.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
ProjectManagerApprovalRule	Condition	ExpenseReport/ projectTotalVOtotal	Attribute that stores the total expense charged against each project in an expense report. The view object only stores details for expense reports that contain projects.
	List Builder	Resource	Static list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Participants	ExpenseReport/ projectTotalVOManagerUsername	The approver of the expense report is the project manager.

## CostCenterRuleSet: Approval by Cost Center Owners in Parallel Mode

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports by cost center owners is called `CostCenterRuleSet`. This rule set has the following predefined rules:

- If the total amount charged to cost centers other than the employee's default cost center is greater than zero, the expense report is sent to the cost center owner for approval.
  - If expenses are charged to a cost center other than the employee's default cost center, the applicable cost center owners receive the approval notification in parallel. The approval is complete when all cost center owners identified as approvers have approved the expense report.
- If the cost center of the expenses is the same as the default cost center of the employee, an automatic response is generated that indicates there is no cost center approval.

You can change the predefined rules, delete, or add rules as needed. The following table lists the parameters for the CostCenterRuleSet rule set.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
CostcenterIsNotEmpDefaultCostcent Condition		ExpenseReport/ costCenterTotalVOcostCenter	Attribute that stores the cost centers in the expense report.
	Condition	Task. payload. getExpenseReportVOResponse. result. defaultCostCenter	Default cost center of the employee.
	List Builder	Resource	Static list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Participants	ExpenseReport/ costCenterTotalVOManagerUsernam	The approver of the expense report is the cost center owner.
CostcenterIsEmpDefaultCostcenterR Condition		ExpenseReport/ costCenterTotalVOcostCenter	Attribute that stores the cost centers in the expense report.
	Condition	Task. payload. getExpenseReportVOResponse. result. defaultCostCenter	Default cost center of the employee.
	List Builder	Supervisory	The rule uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Number of levels	1	Number of supervisory levels required for approval completion.
	Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal("workflowsystem"-1,"","")	Person for whom the expense report is created.
	Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal(Task. creator-1"","")	Person for whom the expense report is submitted.
	Auto Action Enabled	True	Automatic approval is enabled.
	Auto Action	Approve	The response is set to Approve.



## ExpenseRuleSet: Approval by a Specialist Based on Expense Types in Parallel Mode

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports based on the template name or any attributes of the expense type is called ExpenseRuleSet. This rule set has the following predefined rules:

- If the template name for any of the expenses is Relocation Expenses, the expense report is routed to approval by a predefined user.
- If the expense reports don't contain any expenses with the expense template Relocation Expenses, an automatic approval response is generated that indicates there is no special approval.

You can change the predefined rules, delete, or add rules as needed. The following table lists selected parameters for the ExpenseRuleSet rule set.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
ExpenseTypesRelocationExpensesF Condition		ExpenseReport/ expenseVOexpenseTemplateName	Attribute that stores the cost centers in the expense report.
	List Builder	Resource	Static list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Participants	User ID of the approver	The approver of the expense report is a specialist.
ExpenseTypesNotRelocationExpens Condition		ExpenseReport/ expenseVOexpenseTemplateName	Auto approval enabled with the same list builder criteria as ExpenseReportAutoApprovalRule
	List Builder	Supervisory	The rule uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Number of levels	1	Number of supervisory levels required for approval completion.
	Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal("workflowsystem"-1,"","")	Person for whom the expense report is created.
	Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal(Task. creator-1,"","")	Person for whom the expense report is submitted.
	Auto Action Enabled	True	Automatic approval is enabled.

## SerialProjectManagerRuleSet: Approval by Project Managers in Serial Mode

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports in serial mode by project managers is called `SerialProjectManagerRuleSet`. This rule set contains the same rule as the parallel approval, but the rule set is configured to send the approval notifications sequentially to the approvers in the list. Each notification to a subsequent approver is sent only after the current approver approves the expense report. If the current approver rejects the expense report, the approval process is complete and the report returns to the user.

## SerialCostCenterRuleSet: Approval by Cost Center Owners in Serial Mode

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports in serial mode by cost center owners is called `SerialCostCenterRuleSet`. This rule set contains the same rule as the parallel approval, but the rule set is configured to send the approval notifications sequentially to the approvers in the list. Each notification to a subsequent approver is sent only after the current approver approves the expense report. If the current approver rejects the expense report, the approval process is complete and the report returns to the user.

## SerialExpenseRuleSet: Approval by a Specialist Based on Expense Types in Serial Mode

The predefined rule set for approval of expense reports based on a template name or any attributes of the expense type is called `SerialExpenseRuleSet`. The rule set contains the same rule as the parallel approval, but the rule set is configured to send the approval notifications sequentially to the approvers in the list. Each notification to a subsequent approver is sent only after the current approver approves the expense report. If the current approver rejects the expense report, the approval process is complete and the expense report returns to the user.

## How You Define Approval Rules

Approval rules are configurable rules for expense report approval created in Approval Management Extensions. Oracle Fusion Expenses provides nine predefined rule sets. By using the BPM Worklist, you can define new approval rules or modify existing ones in AMX. To manage approval rules, you must be a BPM Worklist administrator, such as a financial application administrator.

If you are authorized to manage the approval rules, you can:

- Modify existing approval rules
- Define new approval rules
- Understand and apply properties of rules and rule sets

If you are authorized to manage the approval rules, an Administration link displays in the corner of the BPM Worklist. To define new approval rules or modify existing ones, click the Administration link, click the Task Configuration tab, click the Data Driven tab to display the Data driven configuration page, and then select the `FinExmWorkflowExpenseApproval` task from the Tasks to be configured pane.

Each rule set contains one or more approval rules. Each approval rule has an approval condition and a list of approvers. The list of approvers derived for each rule set is called a participant. To generate the list of approvers, each rule requires a list builder to be associated with it.

Each expense report can only satisfy one rule within a rule set. If an expense report does not satisfy any rule in a rule set, the approval process errors and an incident is reported in Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control.

## Modify Existing Approval Rules

In the Data driven configuration page, select a rule set to modify and click the Edit icon in the Tasks to be configured pane. You can now add, modify, or delete rules within the specified rule set. The changes take effect when you click the Commit Task icon in the Tasks to be configured pane. Saving changes by clicking the Save icon saves the changes, but it does not activate them. If needed, you can undo changes by clicking the Reset icon.


## Define New Approval Rules

To create new rules, you must provide values for the following rule components:

- Condition: Criteria that an expense report must satisfy
- Response type: Required or FYI. A response from the approver is required or the notification is informational.
- List builder: Creates a list of approvers for a specific notification

To define a condition, select a value from the list of values in the IF region. The Condition Browser displays. In the Condition Browser, open a view object (folder) and select the attribute that you want to use as the criteria. You can add multiple conditions to a rule. An example of a condition is: ExpenseReport.expenseReportTotal more than 1000.

The following table lists view objects (folders) that are visible in the Condition Browser with their associated attributes and descriptions.

 **Note:** The following table contains view objects with their associated attributes and descriptions that you can select as conditions for expense report approval rules.

View Object in Condition Browser	Attribute	Description
ExpenseReport	ExpenseReportId	Expense report identifier
ExpenseReport	PersonId	Person identifier of the employee on the expense report
ExpenseReport	AssignmentId	Primary assignment identifier of the employee's assignment
ExpenseReport	ExpenseReportDate	Date of the latest expense in the expense report
ExpenseReport	ExpenseReportTotal	Total amount of the expense report in the reimbursement currency
ExpenseReport	ReimbursementCurrencyCode	Expense report reimbursement currency
ExpenseReport	ReportSubmitDate	Date on which the expense report was submitted for approval
ExpenseReport	ExpenseStatusCode	Most recent status of the expense report

View Object in Condition Browser	Attribute	Description
ExpenseReport	ExpenseStatusDate	Date of the most recent status of the expense report
ExpenseReport	OrgId	Business unit identifier of the expense report
ExpenseItem	ReceiptAmount	Expense amount in receipt currency
ExpenseItem	ReceiptCurrencyCode	Currency code of the expense amount
ExpenseItem	ExpenseSource	Source of the expense item, cash, or corporate card
ExpenseItem	ExpenseTypeCategoryCode	Category of the expense item, such as Airfare or Accommodations
ExpenseItem	ExpenseCategoryCode	Classification of expense item, such as Business or Personal
ExpenseItem	ExpenseTemplateId	Expense template identifier for the expense item
ExpenseItem	ExpenseTypeId	Expense type identifier of the expense item
ExpenseItem	PolicyViolatedFlag	Check box that indicates whether the expense item has policy violations
ExpenseItem	ReceiptMissingFlag	Check box that indicates whether the user has the original receipt
ExpenseItem	EmpDefaultCostCenter	Default cost center of the employee
CostCenterTotal	ExpenseReportId	Expense report identifier
CostCenterTotal	CostCenter	Cost center against which the expense is incurred
CostCenterTotal	Total	Total expense charged to the cost center
CostCenterTotal	ManagerId	Person identifier of the cost center owner
CostCenterTotal	ManagerUsername	User name of the cost center owner
ProjectTotal	ExpenseReportId	Expense report identifier
ProjectTotal	PjcProjectId	Project identifier

View Object in Condition Browser	Attribute	Description
ProjectTotal	Total	Total expense charged to the project
ProjectTotal	ProjectPartyId	Person identifier of the project manager
ProjectTotal	ManagerUsername	User name of the project manager

Each approval notification generated from an approval rule must have a response type of Required or FYI. You specify the applicable response type in the THEN region on the Data driven configuration page of the BPM Worklist. If the approver should take an action in response to the notification, click the Required radio button. If the approval notification is designed as information only, click the FYI radio button.

Each rule requires a list builder to build the list of approvers. The following table contains the list builder types with their associated descriptions that are available in the BPM Worklist.

List Builder Type	Description
Supervisory	Ascends the primary supervisory hierarchy, starting at the expense report submitter or at a given approver, and generates the approval chain.
Job Level	Ascends the supervisory hierarchy, starting at a given approver and continuing until an approver with the appropriate job level is found.
Position	Ascends the position hierarchy, starting at a given approver's position and continuing until an approver with the appropriate position is found.
Resource	A list of approvers. You can choose a user name or a function that returns a set of approvers.
Approval Group	Group of approvers. You can create approver groups consisting of a list of users for use in the rule sets.

Each list builder type requires values for specific fields to build its approval list. In the THEN region on the Data driven configuration page of the BPM Worklist, select a type of list builder from the List Builder choice list and click the **Create Action** button. The Add Variable dialog box displays where you add specific variables for specific list builders.

The following table contains the fields associated with each list builder type for which you must select specific values.

List Builder Type	Field	Description	Values to Select and Sample Data
Supervisor	Number of Levels	A positive number specifying the number of levels to traverse the supervisory hierarchy.	A positive number based on your needs. For example, use 1 for one level of approval.
Supervisor	Starting Participant	The first participant in the list.	From the Add Variable dialog box, select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The <b>Get Manager</b> radio button</li></ul>

List Builder Type	Field	Description	Values to Select and Sample Data
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Supervisory</b> as the <b>List Builder</b></li> <li>• <b>Reference User</b> as <b>task.creator</b> to start from the person on the expense report</li> <li>• An <b>Effective Date</b> if applicable</li> </ul> <p>This creates the following string for the start participant: HierarchyBuilder.getManager("supervisory",Task.creator,-1,"","").</p>
Supervisor	Top Participant	The last participant in the list. The approval list does not go beyond this person in a hierarchy.	<p>From the Add Variable dialog box:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the <b>Get User</b> radio button.</li> <li>• Enter the user name of the last person in the approval chain as the <b>Reference User</b>.</li> <li>• Select an <b>Effective Date</b> if applicable.</li> </ul> <p>This creates the following string as the highest participant: HierarchyBuilder.getPrincipal("&lt;&gt;",-1,"","")</p>
Supervisor	Auto Action Enabled	If automatic response should be enabled for the approval notification, set to True.	Not applicable
Supervisor	Auto Action	If automatic response is enabled, set the response.	For expense approval, use Approve.
Position	Number of Levels	A positive number specifying the number of levels to traverse the position hierarchy. This number can be an absolute value or a value relative to the <b>Starting Point</b> or <b>Creator</b> .	Not applicable
Position	Relative to	The number of levels to traverse is relative to one of the following values: <b>Starting Point</b> , <b>Creator</b> , or <b>Absolute</b> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At most <b>2</b> relative to <b>Starting Point</b></li> <li>• At least <b>2</b> relative to <b>Starting Point</b>.</li> </ul>
Position	Starting Participant	The first participant in the list.	<p>To select a starting participant, click the list of values and select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>Get Manager</b> radio button</li> </ul>

List Builder Type	Field	Description	Values to Select and Sample Data
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Position</b> as the <b>List Builder</b></li> <li>• <b>Reference User</b> as the position identifier of the starting position</li> <li>• A <b>Hierarchy Type</b>. This is a mandatory selection for the position list builder. To select a hierarchy type, you must first define a position hierarchy in Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources.</li> <li>• An <b>Effective Date</b> if applicable</li> </ul> <p>This creates a string for the starting participant. For example, to start from position ID 1234, use <code>HierarchyBuilder.getManager("position","1234",-1,"",ENTERPRISE_POSITION_HIERARCHY)</code> as the start participant.</p>
Position	Top Participant	The last participant in the list. The approval list does not go beyond this person in a hierarchy.	<p>From the Add Variable dialog box:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the <b>Get User</b> radio button.</li> <li>• Enter the position identifier for the last position in the approval chain as the <b>Reference User</b>.</li> <li>• Select an <b>Effective Date</b> if applicable.</li> </ul> <p>This creates a string for the highest participant. For example, <code>HierarchyBuilder.getPrincipal("&lt;&gt;","","",ENTERPRISE_POSITION_HIERARCHY)</code>.</p>
Position	Utilized Participants	Uses only the participants specified in this option from the calculated list of participants. Available options are: <b>Everyone, First and Last Manager, Last Manager</b> .	Not applicable
Position	Auto Action Enabled	If automatic response should be enabled for the notification, set to True.	Not applicable

List Builder Type	Field	Description	Values to Select and Sample Data
Position	Auto Action	If automatic response is enabled, set the response.	For expense approval, use Approve.
Job Level	Number of Levels	A positive number specifying the number of levels to traverse the job level hierarchy. This number can be an absolute value, or a value relative to <b>Starting Point</b> or <b>Creator</b> .	Not applicable
Job Level	Relative to	The number of levels to traverse is relative to one of the following values: <b>Starting Point</b> , <b>Creator</b> , or <b>Absolute</b> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At most <b>2</b> relative to <b>Absolute</b></li> <li>At least <b>1</b> relative to <b>Absolute</b></li> </ul>
Job Level	Starting Participant	The first participant in the list.	<p>From the Add Variable dialog box, select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Get User</b> radio button</li> <li><b>Job Level</b> as the <b>List Builder</b></li> <li><b>Reference User</b> as <b>task.creator</b> to start from the person on the expense report</li> <li>An <b>Effective Date</b> if applicable</li> </ul> <p>This creates a string for the start participant. For example, <code>HierarchyBuilder.getManager("joblevel",task.creator,-1,"","")</code>.</p>
	Top Participant	The last participant in the list. The approval list does not go beyond this person in a hierarchy.	<p>From the Add Variable dialog box:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the <b>Get User</b> radio button.</li> <li>Enter the user name for the last approver in the approval chain as the <b>Reference User</b>.</li> <li>Select an <b>Effective Date</b> if applicable.</li> </ul> <p>This creates the following string as the highest participant: <code>HierarchyBuilder.getPrincipal("&lt;&gt;",-1,"","")</code></p>
Job Level	Include all managers at last level	If the job level equals that of the previously calculated last participant in the list, then it includes the next manager in the list.	Not applicable



List Builder Type	Field	Description	Values to Select and Sample Data
Job level	Utilized Participants	Uses only the participants specified in this option from the calculated list of participants. Available options are: <b>Everyone, First and Last Manager, Last Manager.</b>	Not applicable
Job Level	Auto Action Enabled	If automatic response should be enabled for the approval notification, set to True.	Not applicable
Job level	Auto Action	If automatic response is enabled, set the response.	For expense approval, use Approve.
Resource	Participants	Participants can be users, groups, or application roles. For users, use a static user name or a function to retrieve a user name.	For example, use ExpenseReport/costCenterTotalVManagerUsername for cost center owner.
Approval Group	Approval Group	Enter the approval group name. To select an approval group as a list builder, you must create the static approval groups in the BPM Worklist.	Not applicable

For more information on configuring approval rules, see the Using Task Configuration section of the Using Approval Management chapter in the Oracle Fusion Middleware Modeling and Implementation Guide.

## Understand and Apply Properties of Rules and Rule Sets

The following are properties of rules and rule sets that you need to understand and apply.

- For each expense report, one rule must be true within each rule set. If the expense report does not satisfy any rule in the rule set, the approval process will error.
- Since there can be only one rule that applies in a rule set for each expense report, you must configure the rules at the most granular level applicable and use priority within the rule to differentiate overlapping conditions. AMX does not support nested conditions.
- All rule sets are executed in parallel or in serial with respect to the Expense Report Approval Stage.
- Serial rule sets are designed to execute the approval process in a sequential order. The approvers in the approval list for any rule included in these rule sets are notified in a sequential order.
- To deactivate a rule set, check the **Ignore this participant** check box for that rule set.
- If the participants cannot be determined, then AMX sends out a failure notification to the user with an incident identifier. Administrators can access the incident details through the Support Workbench of the Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control application and restart the approval process in Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control after resolving the issues in the incident report.

# How You Set Up Approval Rules for Delegated Expense Reports

Oracle Fusion Expenses enables you to delegate expense entry to another person. To understand the approval process for delegated expense reports, it is necessary to understand the distinction between preparer, or creator, and owner. The person who submits an expense report for another person is called the preparer. The person who incurs the expenses is called the owner of the expense report.

Expenses provides predefined approval rules to support delegated expense report approval. When a preparer submits an expense report, the following approval process ensues.

- **Approval by expense report owner**  
In the first part of the approval process, the expense report is routed to the expense report owner for approval. The expense report has a status of Pending Individual Approval. The rule set for this part of the approval process is called the ExpenseReportApprovalStageExpenseReportD : ExpenseReportOwnerRuleSet in the BPM Worklist application.
- **Approval by preparer's manager**  
In the second part of the approval process, the expense report is routed to the preparer's manager hierarchy for approval. The Expense report has a status of Pending Manager Approval. The rule set for this part of the approval process is called ExpenseReportApprovalStage : ExpenseReportRuleSet in the BPM Worklist application.

This topic discusses the following two scenarios that require you to modify the rule sets if your company enables delegated expense entry.

- Bypass approval by owner
- Start approval with owner's manager

Based on your company policies, any one of the following scenarios can apply:

- Only bypass approval by owner
- Only start approval with owner's manager
- Both bypass approval by owner and start approval with owner's manager
- Neither bypass approval by owner nor start approval with owner's manager

## Bypass Approval By Owner

If your company policy does not require expense report approval by the expense report owner, you can modify the rule set to bypass this approval. When bypassed, the expense report status is set to Pending Manager Approval. The expense report is routed to approvers based on the existing approval rules.

To bypass approval by the owner, perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to the Oracle BPM Worklist application.
2. Click the **Administration** link displayed in the corner of the page. The Administration tab appears.
3. Click the Task Configuration tab.
4. Click the Rules tab.
5. In the Tasks to be configured pane, select the FinExmWorkflowExpenseApproval task.
6. From the Select Ruleset choice list, select the following predefined rule set:  
**SoaOLabel.ExpenseReportApprovalStageExpenseReportD : ExpenseReportOwnerRuleSet .**

7. Select the **Ignore this participant** check box. This action tells the approval rule to ignore the owner as the first approver in the approval rule.
8. To save the modified rule set, click the **Save** icon in the Tasks to be configured pane.
9. To commit the modified rule set, click the **Commit task** icon in the Tasks to be configured pane.

## Start Approval with Owner's Manager

The approval process routes the expense reports to the preparer's manager hierarchy.

If your company policy requires expense reports to be routed to the owner's manager hierarchy for approval, perform the following steps.

1. To navigate to the expense report approval taskflow, perform steps 1-5 in the preceding section.
2. From the Select Ruleset choice list, select the following predefined rule set:  
**SoaOLabel.ExpenseReportApprovalStage : ExpenseReportRuleSet.**
3. Click the **Edit task** icon (pencil) on the Tasks to be configured pane.
4. Expand the ExpenseReportManagerApproval rule.
5. In the List builder action 1 region, click in the **Starting Participant** field and scroll until you see ("supervisory",Task.creator,.
6. In the **Starting Participant** field, replace Task.creator with Task.payload.Expense Report Owner as shown in the following table.

Predefined Value	Changed Value
HierarchyBuilder. getManager("supervisory"Task. creator -1, "", "")	HierarchyBuilder. getManager("supervisory" Task. payload. Expense Report Owner, -1, "", "")

7. To save the modified rule set, click the **Save** icon in the Tasks to be configured pane.
8. To commit the modified rule set, click the **Commit task** icon in the Tasks to be configured pane.

**⚠ Caution:** Expenses recommends that you evaluate any existing approval rules that use Task.creator as the first approver in an approval hierarchy to determine whether the first approver should be changed from task.creator to Task.payload.Expense Report Owner.

## Modify the Printable Expense Report Template

The Printable Expense Report template is a RTF file. You can change the information that displays on the Printable Expense Report template. First you download the RTF file, FinExmExpenseTemplate, to your local drive from Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher. Then you can modify attribute names or attribute display text with their corresponding predefined attributes. Finally, you upload the modified template to Oracle BI Publisher.

On the FinExmExpenseTemplate RTF file, you can modify the following:

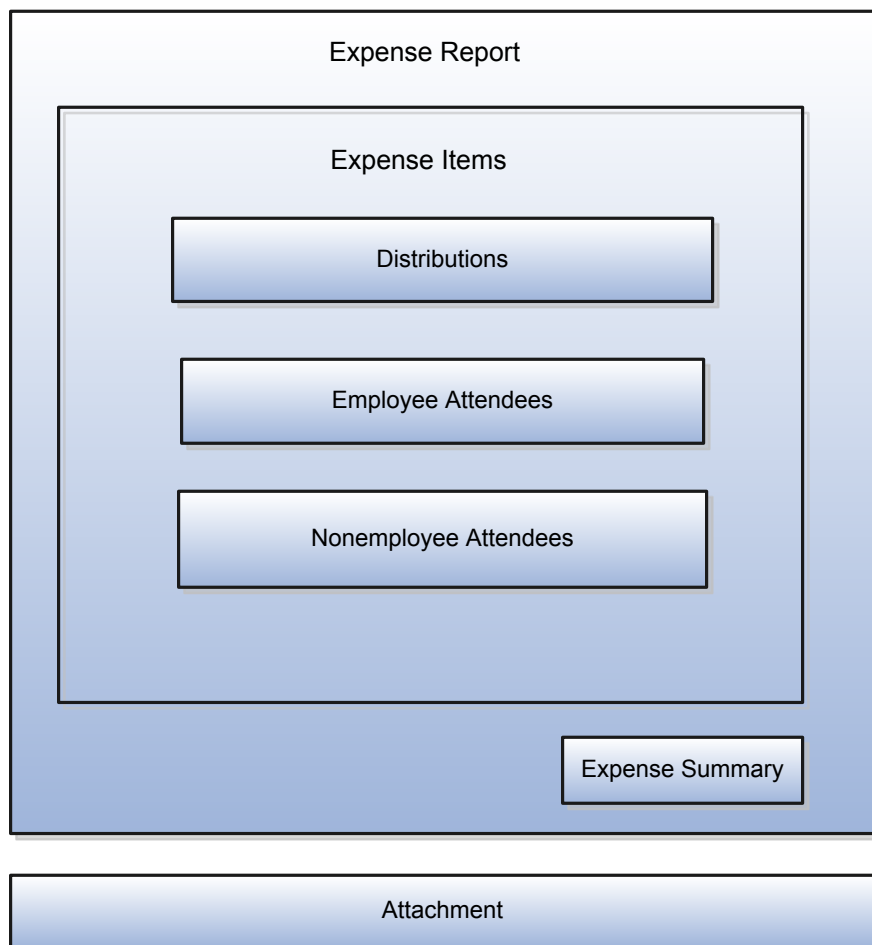
- Attribute names: Displayed as UI text on the RTF file.
- Attribute display text: Displayed as bold text on the RTF file.
- Attributes: Code that corresponds to the attribute display text on the RTF file.

The following table contains regions on the Printable Expense Report template that correspond to predefined view objects.

Regions on the RTF Template	Predefined View Objects
Expense Report Header	PrintableReportVO
Expense Items	PrintableExpenseVO
Distributions	PrintableExpenseDistVO
Employee Attendees	EmployeeExpenseAttendeeVO
Nonemployee Attendees	NonemployeeExpenseAttendeeVO
Expense Summary	ExpenseSummaryVO
Attachment	AttachmentVO

Given the region on the Printable Expense Report template in which your intended change is located, you can then identify which view object table to consult. The view object tables list the attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes. The predefined attributes are available for you to add to the Printable Expense Report template. To access the view object tables, click the Printable Expense Report Template Attributes related link in this topic.

The following diagram illustrates the layout of the regions on the Printable Expense Report template.



## Prerequisites

Before you can modify the FinExmExpenseTemplate RTF file, you must download and install the Template Builder for Word, which is a BI Publisher add-on for Microsoft Word. To download and install the Template Builder for Word, follow these steps:


1. Sign into the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
2. On the Oracle Business Intelligence home page by the Get Started section, click the **Download BI Publisher Desktop Tools** link.
3. Select and install **Template Builder for Word**.

## Downloading the Printable Expense Report Template

To download a copy of the FinExmExpenseTemplate RTF file from Oracle BI Publisher, complete these steps:

1. Sign into the Oracle BI Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
2. Navigate: **Navigator > Tools > Reports and Analytics**.
3. On the Oracle BI Publisher home page, click the Catalog menu.
4. On the Catalog page in the Folders pane, expand Shared Folders > Financials > Expenses.

5. Click the Expenses folder to display the Printable Expense Report template.
6. By the Printable Expense Report template, click the **Edit** link.  
The Printable Expense Report Template page appears.
7. By the FinExmExpenseTemplate icon, click the **Edit** link.
8. Click **Save as** to save the Printable Expense Report template RTF file to your local drive.

 **Tip:** Save the downloaded template with the name UpdatedPrintableExpenseReport to distinguish it from the predefined template.

## Adding a Predefined Attribute

To add a predefined attribute to a location on the Printable Expense Report template, complete these steps:

1. Select existing attribute display text, such as **ExpenseReportDate**.
2. Copy the attribute display text by pressing Ctrl + C on your keyboard.
3. Move your cursor to the location where you want to add the predefined attribute and press Ctrl + V on your keyboard.
4. Select the new field you pasted, right-click, and navigate: BI Publisher > Properties.  
The BI Publisher Properties dialog box appears.
5. In the **Text to display** field, change the attribute display text.
6. Select the Advanced tab.
7. Click the Printable Expense Report Template Attributes related link in this topic.
8. In the Printable Expense Report Template Attributes topic, determine which view object table to consult based on the location on which you want to add the predefined attribute.  
For example, if you want to add a predefined attribute to the header region of the Printable Expense Report template, you would consult the PrintableReportVO - Expense Report Header Region table. Then, in the In the PrintableReportVO - Expense Report Header Region table, locate the UI label and associated predefined attribute that you want to add.
9. In the Advanced tab, enter the predefined attribute between the question marks.
10. Click **OK**.

## Uploading the Printable Expense Report Template


To upload the FinExmExpenseTemplate RTF file to Oracle BI Publisher, complete these steps:

1. Sign into the Oracle BI Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role.
2. Navigate: **Navigators > Tools > Reports and Analytics**.
3. On the Oracle BI Publisher home page, click the Catalog menu.
4. Click the **New** icon.
5. From the New menu, select **Report**.
6. On the Create Report page, select the **Use Data Model** icon.
7. In the Select Data Model dialog box, click **Cancel** to bypass the data model, which is not applicable.
8. Click **OK** to confirm cancellation.
9. On the Data Model page, click the **Upload** icon.
10. In Upload Template File dialog box, enter the following:
  - a. In the **Layout Name** field, enter **FinExmExpenseTemplate**.
  - b. In the **Template File** field, browse for your modified Printable Expense Report template RTF file on your local drive, select the template, and click **Open**.

- c. From the Type choice list, select **RTF Template**.
- d. From the Locale choice list, select **English (United States)**.
- e. Click **Upload**.

The modified RTF file appears with the layout name **FinExmExpenseTemplate**.

11. Click the **Save Report** icon.  
The Save As dialog box appears.
12. In the **Save In** field, navigate to the folder where you want to save the modified Printable Expense Report template.

 **Tip:** A copy of your modified Printable Expense Report template is automatically saved in the Expenses folder at: Shared Folders > Custom > Financials > Expenses.

13. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the modified Printable Expense Report Template, such as UpdatedFinExmReport.

 **Caution:** When you name the report in the **Name** field, don't include spaces.

14. Click **OK**.

Now you can navigate to the Expenses System Option page through Setup and Maintenance. After you click a specific business unit link in the Specific Business Units section, select the Corporate Options for Expense Report tab. Then you can select your modified expense report template from the Printable Expense Report Format choice list.

## Adding an Attachment Region to the Printable Expense Report Template

If your Printable Expense Report Template is missing the Attachment region, you can add the missing components as follows:

- `<?for-each:Attachment?>`
- Placeholder image with alt-text = `url:{DOCUMENT}`
- `<?TITLE?>`
- `<?end for each?>`

To add the missing components, follow these steps:

1. In the RTF Printable Expense Report template, scroll to end of the file.
2. Select and copy any **For** field and paste on a separate line outside the last table at the end of the template.
3. Select For and navigate: **Add-ins > BI Publisher > Field Browser**.
4. In the Field Browser dialog box, click **Show All**.
5. Scroll to the end of the list.
6. Select the last For in the **Text** and **Code** fields in the Field Browser dialog box. The last For is the For you just copied in Step 2 and it's what you must update.
7. In the Edit field, change the code to `<?for-each:Attachment?>`
8. Click **Update**.
9. Click **Close**.
10. After For in your work area of the RTF Printable Expense Report template, press the Enter key on the keyboard twice.
11. Navigate: **Insert > Pictures**.
12. Browse to the image.
13. Select the image and click **Insert**.
14. Click the image.

15. On the image, right-click the mouse and select **Picture**.
16. In the Format Picture dialog box, select the Alt Text tab.
17. In the **Alternative text** field, enter **url:{DOCUMENT}**.
18. Click **OK**.
19. After the image in your work area, press the Enter key on the keyboard twice.
20. Copy and paste any field in your work area.
21. Select the field you pasted and navigate: **Add-ins > BI Publisher > Field Browser**.
22. In the Field Browser dialog box, click **Show All**.
23. Scroll to the end of the list.
24. Select the final entry.
25. In the Edit field, change the code to **<?TITLE?>**.
26. Click **Update**.
27. Click **Close**.
28. Double-click the field you pasted. The Text Form Field Options dialog box appears.
29. In the **Default text** field, enter **Title**.
30. Click **OK**.
31. After Title in your work area, press the Enter key on the keyboard twice.
32. Select and copy any **End For** field and paste on a separate line after Title.
33. Select End For and navigate: **Add-ins > BI Publisher > Field Browser**.
34. In the Field Browser dialog box, the **Text** and **Code** fields show exactly what you need, so you don't have to change the code.
35. Click **Close**.
36. Click the **Save** icon in the RTF Printable Expense Report template.

#### Related Topics

- [Example of Modifying Expenses Email Notifications Using Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher](#)

## Printable Expense Report Template Attributes

The following tables contain attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes that you can use to modify the Printable Expense Report template. Use these view object tables with the figure in the topic titled [Modifying the Printable Expense Report Template: Procedures](#) that is a related link in this topic.

### PrintableReportVO - Expense Report Header Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Expense Report header region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Assignment ID	AssignmentId	Assignment identifier of the individual on the corporate card.
Audit Code	AuditCode	Audit type for the expense report based on receipt requirements, such as original receipt-based audit and imaged receipt-based audit.



Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Both Pay Identifier	BothPayFlag	Indicates whether the expense report contains corporate card transactions with Both Pay payment liability.
Business Group ID	BusinessGroupId	Identifier of an enterprise. Used for multi-tenancy partitioning.
Cash Expense Payment Date	CashExpensePaidDate	Date when cash expense was reimbursed to the individual.
Created By	CreatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who created the row.
Creation Date	CreationDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the creation of the row.
Current Approver ID	CurrentApproverId	Identifier of the current approver of the expense report.
Display Name	DisplayName	Derived denormalized name formatted for UI display. Formatting depends on the legislation code. Expect first name as first component in this format.
Displayed Field	DisplayedField	Expense report status.
Employee Number	EmployeeNumber	Number that identifies an employee within a company.
Entertainment Expense Identifier	EntertainmentExpenseFlag	Indicates whether this report contains any entertainment expenses.
Exchange Rate Type	ExchangeRateType	Conversion rate type used for calculating the reimbursable amount.
Expense Dates	ExpenseDates	Expense report date range.
Expense Report Date	ExpenseReportDate	Month, day, and year in which an expense report is saved or submitted.
Expense Report ID	ExpenseReportId	Identifier of the expense report.
Expense Report Number	ExpenseReportNum	Number that references an expense report and follows the numbering policies of the company.
Expense Report Processing ID	ExpRepProcessingId	Identifier of the expense report details, such as report status change history.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Expense Report Request ID	ExportRequestId	Identifier of a specific instance of the expense reimbursement process that processed this report.
Expense Report Total	ExpenseReportTotal	Total amount of the expense report in reimbursement currency. Amount in approver preferred currency is also shown if approver has a different preferred currency.
Expense Status Code	ExpenseStatusCode	Expense report approval status, such as Approved, Pending Manager Approval, or Paid.
Expense Status Date	ExpenseStatusDate	Date when expense report acquired the current status.
First Name	FirstName	Person's first name.
Formatted Report Submit Date	FormattedReportSubmitDate	Formatted date representing the date the expense report was submitted.
Formatted Total	FormattedTotal	Formatted report total amount based on reimbursement currency code.
Full Name	FullName	System constructed version of name. Used in more formal display purposes
Home Address	HomeAddress	Person's home address.
Imaged Receipt Status Code	ImagedReceiptStatusCode	Represents the imaged receipt status for the expense report.
Last Name	LastName	Person's last name.
Last Update Date	LastUpdateDate	Date the expense report was last updated.
Last Update Login	LastUpdateLogin	Login ID of the last person who accessed the expense report.
Last Updated By	LastUpdatedBy	Login ID of the last person who updated the expense report.
List Name	ListName	Constructed version of a person's name, intended for use in an alphabetically-ordered list. The value may naturally differ depending on the Legislation Code. Expect the last name as the first component in this format in most cases.
Middle Name	MiddleNames	Person's middle name.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Mileage Expense Identifier	MileageExpenseFlag	Indicates whether this report contains any mileage expense items.
Missing Images Reason	MissingImagesReason	Reason imaged receipts are not submitted with the expense report.
Object Version Number	ObjectVersionNumber	Used to implement optimistic locking. This number is incremented every time that the row is updated. The number is compared at the start and end of a transaction to detect whether another session has updated the row since it was queried.
Order Name ID	OrderName ID	System-constructed version of name used for sorting. A value is always stored in this location.
Organization ID	OrgId	Identifier of the business unit associated with the row.
Override Approver ID	OverrideApproverId	Identifier of the person chosen as the initial approver by the individual.
Parent Expense Report ID	ParentExpenseReportId	Identifier of the parent expense report.
Payment Method Code	PaymentMethodCode	Method of payment for this expense report, such as check, cash, or credit.
Person ID	PersonId	Identifier of the person whose expenses are included in this expense report.
Preparer ID	PreparerId	Identifier of the person who created the expense report.
Purpose	Purpose	Purpose of the expense report as entered by the user.
Receipt Filing Number	ReceiptFilingNumber	Receipt filing number that is manually entered by the expense auditor.
Receipt Status Code	ReceiptsStatusCode	Receipt status of an expense report, such as Missing, Required, or Received.
Receipts Receive Date	ReceiptsReceiveDate	Date when receipts for the expense report are received
Regular Expense Identifier	RegularExpenseFlag	Indicates whether this report contains any regular expenses, such as those that are not mileage, not entertainment, or not per diem.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Reimbursement Currency Code	ReimbursementCurrencyCode	Currency of the amount to be reimbursed to the individual for the expenses incurred.
Report Submit Date	ReportSubmitDate	Month, day, and year in which an expense report is submitted.
Single Reimbursement Code	SingleReimbCurrencyCode	The expense report reimbursement currency shown in the expense item table when all expense items have the same currency.

## ExpenseSummaryVO - Expense Summary Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Expense Summary region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Amount	Amount	Amount that is due from employer or employee.
Card ID	CardId	Identifier of the corporate card transaction.
Card Number	CardNumber	Token or encrypted card number.
Currency Code	CurrencyCode	Currency of the amount to be reimbursed to the individual for the expenses incurred.
Estimated Total	EstimatedTotal	Estimated expense report total.
Expense Report ID	ExpenseReportId	Identifier of the expense report.
Formatted Amount	FormattedAmount	Formatted amount based on the currency code.
Payment Due From	Payment DueFrom	Party responsible for payment.
Summary Type	SummaryType	Indicator of payment responsibility.
Total	Total	Total amount of the expense report in reimbursement currency.

## PrintableExpenseVO - Expense Items Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Expense Items region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Assignment ID	AssignmentId	Identifier of the assignment for the person on the expense report.
Billed Amount	BilledAmount	Amount billed to the corporate card account.
Billed Currency Code	BilledCurrencyCode	Corporate card transaction billed currency code.
Billed Date	BilledDate	Date of the statement on which the transaction appears.
Billed Decimal Placement	BilledDecimal	Number of decimal places used to display the billed amount.
Business Amount	BusinessAmount	Expense business amount.
Card ID	CardId	Identifier of a specific corporate card.
Card Member Name	CardmemberName	Card member name.
Card Number	CardNumber	Token or encrypted card number.
Card Program ID	CardProgramId	Identifier of the corporate card program.
Card Program Name	CardProgramName	Corporate card program name.
Card Reference ID	CardReferenceId	Identifier of the corporate card in Oracle Fusion Payments.
Card Status Code	CardStatusCode	Status of a corporate card, such as Active, Inactive, or Unassigned.
Category Code	CategoryCode	Expense type category code.
Code Combination ID	CodeCombinationId	Identifier of the accounting code combination to which that expense is charged.
Company Account ID	CompanyAccountId	Identifier assigned by the card issuer to the deploying company or its business unit.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Company Number	CompanyNumber	Corporate account number assigned by the card issuer to the deploying company or its business unit.
Cost Center	CostCenter	Cost center to which an expense item is assigned.
Created By	CreatedBy DisplaySequence	Who column: indicates the user who created the row.
Creation Date	CreationDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the creation of the row.
Credit Card Transaction ID	CreditCardTrxnId	Identifier of a specific corporate card transaction.
Currency Conversion Rate	CurrencyConversionRate	A rate that represents the amount one currency can be exchanged for another at a specific point in time. Oracle Applications can access daily, periodic, and historical rates. These rates are used for foreign currency conversion, revaluation, and translation.
Default Project Expenditure Type	DefaultProjExpendType	Project expenditure that is assigned to an expense type that has not been set up at the project level.
Description	Description	Description of an expense item.
Default Corporate Card Expense Type ID	DfltCcExpTypeId	Card expense type used if no mapping rule has been specified.
Expense Type Category	DisplayedField	Expense type category.
Expense Source	DisplayedField1	Source of the transaction, either Cash or Corporate Card.
Display Policy Violation Identifier	DisplayPolicyViolationFlag	Indicates whether an expense item has a policy violation.
Display Policy Violation Identifier	DisplayViolationFlag	Indicates whether employees are warned when they submit expenses that exceed defined entertainment expense policy rate limit.
Display Receipt Violation Identifier	DispRcptViolationFlag	Indicates whether a receipt missing policy warning is displayed to the user.
Dispute Date	DisputeDate	Date when the individual placed this transaction or dispute.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Employee Default Cost Center	EmpDefaultCostCenter	Employee's default cost center defined in Oracle Human Capital Management.
Employee Name	EmployeeName	Employee's name defined in Oracle Human Capital Management.
Enable Corporate Card Mapping Identifier	EnableCcMappingFlag	Indicates whether the lookup codes from the charge file are associated with the company's expense types.
Project Enabled Identifier	EnableProjectsFlag	Indicates whether the expense item is enabled for projects.
End Date	EndDate	Distribution end date.
Exchange Rate	ExchangeRate	Rate that represents the amount one currency can be exchanged for another at a specific point in time.
Attendee	ExpenseAttendee	Attendee identified at the distribution level.
Expense Category Code	ExpenseCategoryCode	Expense category.
Expense ID	ExpenseId	Identifier of a specific expense item..
Expense Report ID	ExpenseReportId	Identifier of a specific expense report.
Expense Source	ExpenseSource	Source of the transaction, either Cash or Corporate Card.
Expense Template ID	ExpenseTemplateId	Identifier of a specific expense template.
Expense Template Name	ExpenseTemplateName	Name of the expense report template.
Expense Type Category Code	ExpenseTypeCategoryCode	Grouping of expense types and additional data fields that are relevant for a particular grouping of expenses. An example is airfare. This grouping allows expense types to include information such as class of fare, merchant, ticket number, location from, and location to.
Expense Type ID	ExpenseTypeId	Identifier for a specific expense type.
Expense Type Name	ExpenseTypeName	Name of the expense type.
Formatted Amount	FormattedAmount	Formatted reimbursable amount.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Formatted Start Date	FormattedStartDate	Formatted expense start date.
Functional Currency Amount	FuncCurrencyAmount	Amount to be reimbursed to the individual in functional currency for expenses incurred.
Attendees Includes Employees	HasEmployeeAttendees	Indicator that the expense includes employee attendees.
Attendees Includes Nonemployees.	HasNonEmployeeAttendees	Indicator that the expense includes nonemployee attendees.
Imaged Receipt Required Identifier	ImgReceiptRequiredFlag	Indicates whether this expense requires an imaged receipt.
Include Personal Expense Identifier	InclPersonalExpenseFlag	Indicates whether the expense item includes a personal amount.
Itemization Parent Expense ID	ItemizationParentExpenseId	Identifier of the parent expense of an itemized expense item. Possible values are NULL indicating that the expense is not itemized, -1 indicating that the expense is a parent line with itemization, and greater than 0 indicating that the expense is an itemized child line and the value is the parent line's identifier.
Expense Item Sequence	ItemSequence	Sequence in which expenses items are entered into an expense report.
Justification	Justification	Reason an expense was incurred.
Justification Required Identifier	JustificationRequiredFlag	Indicates whether the expense requires justification.
Last Update Date	LastUpdateDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the last update of the row.
Last Updated By	LastUpdatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who last updated the row.
Last Update Login	LastUpdateLogin	Who column: indicates the session login associated with the user who last updated the row.
Location	Location	Expense location.
Location ID	LocationId	Identifier of a specific location.
Masked Card Number	MaskedCardNumber	Token or masked card number.



Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Merchant Document Number	MerchantDocumentNumber	Receipt number on the receipt issued by the merchant.
Merchant Name	MerchantName	Name of the merchant where the expense was incurred.
Merchant Reference	MerchantReference	Purchase identification of a transaction provided by the merchant at the point of sale.
Merchant Taxpayer ID	MerchantTaxpayerId	Tax payer identifier of the merchant.
Expense Template Name	Name	Expense template name.
Number of Days	NumberOfDays	Number of days that the expense spans.
Number of People	NumberPeople	Number of people that attended the event for which an expense was incurred. For example, the number of people that attended a business dinner or an entertainment event.
Object Version Number	ObjectVersionNumber	Used to implement optimistic locking. This number is incremented every time that the row is updated. The number is compared at the start and end of a transaction to detect whether another session has updated the row since it was queried.
Organization ID	OrgId	Identifier of the business unit associated with the row.
Original Reimbursable Amount	OrigReimbursableAmount	Original amount to be reimbursed to the individual for this expense.
Parent Expense Type ID	ParentExpenseTypeId	Identifier of the parent expense of an itemized expense item. Possible values are NULL, indicating that the expense is not itemized, -1 indicating that the expense is a parent line with itemization, and greater than 0 indicating that the expense is an itemized child line and the value is the parent line's identifier.
Passenger Amount	PassengerAmount	Passenger amount of the mileage expense.
Payment Due From Code	PaymentDueFromCode	Party responsible for payment.
Payment Identifier	PaymentFlag	Payment identifier from credit card transactions table.
Personal Amount	PersonalAmount	Amount of the expense that is marked as personal.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Person ID	PersonId	Identifier of the individual.
Policy Short Pay Identifier	PolicyShortpayFlag	Indicates whether the expense is short paid due to policy noncompliance.
Policy Violated Identifier	PolicyViolatedFlag	Indicates whether the expense violated company policies.
Posted Amount	PostedAmount	Transaction amount that was posted to the statement or account.
Posted Currency Code	PostedCurrencyCode	Currency code associated with a posted corporate card transaction.
Posted Date	PostedDate	Date the transaction was posted to the statement.
Posted Decimal Placement	PostedDecimal	Number of decimal places used to display the posted amount.
Preparer ID	PreparerId	Identifier of the person who created the expense.
Project ID	ProjectId	Project identifier of the expense item.
Receipt Amount	ReceiptAmount	Amount of the receipt in the receipt currency.
Receipt Currency Code	ReceiptCurrencyCode	Receipt currency of an expense item.
Receipt Missing Identifier	ReceiptMissingFlag	Indicates whether the receipts are missing for this expense.
Receipt Required Identifier	ReceiptRequiredFlag	Indicates whether this expense requires a receipt.
Receipt Verified Identifier	ReceiptVerifiedFlag	Indicates whether the auditor verified the receipt for this expense.
Reference Number	ReferenceNumber	Corporate card reference number.
Reimbursable Amount	ReimbursableAmount	Expense item reimbursable amount.
Reimbursement Currency Code	ReimbursementCurrencyCode	Expense item reimbursable currency.
Request ID	RequestId	Request identifier in Enterprise Service Scheduler of the process that created or last updated the row.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Sequence Number	SequenceNum	Sequence in which expenses items are entered into an expense report.
Source Type	SourceType	Source of an expense item, such as cash or corporate card.
Start Date	StartDate	Expense item start date.
Transaction Amount	TransactionAmount	Amount charged by the merchant in the currency of the transaction.
Transaction Date	TransactionDate	Transaction date of item for detailed transaction.
Transaction Status	TransactionStatus	Corporate card transaction status.
Transaction Type	TransactionType	Corporate card transaction type.
Trip Distance	TripDistance	Estimated total travel distance for a business trip for which mileage reimbursement will be requested.
Vehicle Category Code	VehicleCategoryCode	Category of vehicle driven, such as Company or Private.

## PrintableExpenseDistVO - Distributions Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Distributions region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Code Combination ID	CodeCombinationId	Identifier of the accounting code combination to which that expense is charged.
Cost Center	CostCenter	Cost center to which the expense is charged.
Created By	CreatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who created the row.
Creation Date	CreationDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the creation of the row.
Expense Distribution ID	ExpenseDistId	Identifier of the expense distribution of a specific expense item.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Expense ID	ExpenseId	Identifier of the expense for this distribution.
Expense Report ID	ExpenseReportId	Identifier of the expense report, which includes the expense corresponding to this distribution.
Last Update Date	LastUpdateDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the last update of the row.
Last Updated By	LastUpdatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who last updated the row.
Last Updated By Login	LastUpdateLogin	Who column: indicates the session login associated with the user who last updated the row.
Object Version Number	Object Version Number	Used to implement optimistic locking. This number is incremented every time that the row is updated. The number is compared at the start and end of a transaction to detect whether another session has updated the row since it was queried.
Organization ID	OrgId	Identifier of the business unit associated with the row.
Project Billable Identifier	PJC_ BILLABLE_ FLAG	Indicates whether a project-related item is available to be billed to customers.
Project Capitalization Identifier	PJC_ CAPITALIZABLE_ FLAG	Indicates whether a project-related item is eligible for capitalization.
Project Context Category	PJC_ CONTEXT_ CATEGORY	Segment used to identify the descriptive flexfield application context for project-related standardized cost collection.
Project Contract ID	PJC_ CONTRACT_ID	Identifier of contract. Used when Oracle Contract Billing or Oracle Grants Accounting is installed.
Project Contract Line ID	PJC_ CONTRACT_ LINE_ID	Tracks contract line information. Used when Oracle Contract Billing or Oracle Grants Accounting is installed.
Project Expenditure Item Date	PJC_ EXPENDITURE_ ITEM_DATE	Date on which a project-related transaction is incurred.
Project Expenditure Type ID	PJC_ EXPENDITURE_ TYPE_ID	Expenditure type used to build the transaction descriptive flexfield for project-related transaction distributions.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Project Funding Allocation ID	PJC_FUNDING_ALLOCATION_ID	Specifies the name of the project funding override. Used when Oracle Contract Billing or Oracle Grants Accounting is installed.
Project Organization ID	PJC_ORGANIZATION_ID	Identifier of expenditure organization used to build the transaction descriptive flexfield for project-related transaction distributions.
Project ID	PJC_PROJECT_ID	Identifier of the project used to build the transaction descriptive flexfield for project-related transaction distributions.
Reserved Project Fields	PJC_RESERVED_ATTRIBUTE1-10	Reserved for project-related functionality.
Project Task ID	PJC_TASK_ID	Identifier of the task used to build the transaction descriptive flexfield for project-related transaction distributions.
Reserved User Defined Project Fields	PJC_USER_DEF_ATTRIBUTE1-10	Reserved for user-defined project information.
Project Work Type ID	PJC_WORK_TYPE_ID	Identifier of project-related classification for worked performed.
Prepare Modified Identifier	PreparerModifiedFlag	Indicates whether the expense preparer modified the account or project distribution.
Project Name	ProjectName	Project name to which an expense item is assigned.
Project Number	ProjectNumber	Project number to which an expense item is assigned.
Reimbursable Amount	ReimbursableAmount	Amount to be reimbursed to the individual against this expense distribution.
Key Flexfield Segment 1-30	Segment1-30	Key flexfield: segment of the key flexfield.
Sequence Number	SequenceNum	Sequence in which the distributions are created.
Task Name	TaskName	Task name to which an expense item is assigned.
Task Number	TaskNumber	Task number to which an expense item is assigned.

## EmployeeExpenseAttendeeVO - Employee Attendees Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Employee Attendees region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Amount	Amount	Amount spent on the expense attendee.
Attendee Party ID	AttendeePartyId	Attendee party identifier.
Attendee Type	AttendeeType	Attendee or recipient type of the expense attendee.
Created By	CreatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who created the row.
Creation Date	CreationDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the creation of the row.
Employee Identifier	EmployeeFlag	Indicates whether an expense attendee is an employee.
Employer Address	EmployerAddress	Employer address of the expense attendee.
Employer Name	EmployerName	Employer name of the employee or nonemployee attendee.
Employer Party ID	EmployerPartyId	Employer party identifier.
Expense Attendee ID	ExpenseAttendeeId	Expense attendee identifier.
Expense ID	ExpenseId	Related expense item identifier.
Formatted Amount	FormattedAmount	Formatted receipt amount.
Last Update Date	LastUpdateDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the last update of the row.
Last Updated By	LastUpdatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who last updated the row.
Last Updated By Login	LastUpdateLogin	Who column: indicates the session login associated with the user who last updated the row.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Name	Name	Name of the employee or nonemployee expense attendee.
Object Version Number	ObjectVersionNumber	Used to implement optimistic locking. This number is incremented every time that the row is updated. The number is compared at the start and end of a transaction to detect whether another session has updated the row since it was queried.
Tax Identifier	TaxIdentifier	Tax identifier of the employee or nonemployee expense attendee.
Title	Title	Title of the employee or nonemployee expense attendee.

## NonemployeeExpenseAttendeeVO - Nonemployee Attendees Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Nonemployee Attendees region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Amount	Amount	Amount spent on the expense attendee.
Attendee Party ID	AttendeePartyId	Attendee party identifier.
Attendee Type	AttendeeType	Attendee or recipient type of the expense attendee.
Created By	CreatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who created the row.
Creation Date	CreationDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the creation of the row.
Employee Identifier	EmployeeFlag	Indicates whether expense attendee is an employee.
Employer Address	EmployerAddress	Employer address of the expense attendee.
Employer Name	EmployerName	Employer name of the employee or nonemployee attendee.
Employer Party ID	EmployerPartyId	Employer party identifier.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Expense Attendee ID	ExpenseAttendeeId	Expense attendee identifier.
Expense ID	ExpenseId	Related expense item identifier.
Formatted Amount	FormattedAmount	Formatted receipt amount.
Last Update Date	LastUpdateDate	Who column: indicates the date and time of the last update of the row.
Last Updated By	LastUpdatedBy	Who column: indicates the user who last updated the row.
Last Updated By Login	LastUpdateLogin	Who column: indicates the session login associated with the user who last updated the row.
Name	Name	Name of the employee or nonemployee expense attendee.
Object Version Number	ObjectVersionNumber	Used to implement optimistic locking. This number is incremented every time that the row is updated. The number is compared at the start and end of a transaction to detect whether another session has updated the row since it was queried.
Tax Identifier	TaxIdentifier	Tax identifier of the employee or non-employee expense attendee.
Title	Title	Title of the employee or nonemployee expense attendee.

## AttachmentVO - Attachment Region

The following table contains attribute names and their corresponding predefined attributes, which are located in the Attachment region on the Printable Expense Report template.

Attribute Name	Predefined Attribute	Description
Document	DOCUMENT	Actual document for the associated document type.
Title	TITLE	Title that the user gave the attachment.



### Related Topics

- [Example of Modifying Expenses Email Notifications Using Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher](#)

## Modify Terms and Agreements

The default corporate policy compliance message is an acceptance statement that employees typically acknowledge by selecting a check box when they create an expense report. The default message states that the worker has read and accepted the corporate travel and expense policies. If you choose to display a corporate policy compliance message, you can use the default provided or you can modify your message text and make it text only or a clickable link that navigates to your company travel and expense policy.

Business units may have their own requirements related to enforcing acceptance of corporate policies. For example, some business units may require specific terms and agreements text that reflects their unique acceptance message. As an implementor, you can decide whether you want to:

- Enforce acknowledgment that the worker has read and accepts the corporate policies by presenting a required check box to select
- Create terms and agreements text specific to a business unit
- Provide specific terms and agreements text that also acts as a link to the corporate policies
- Provide a link to corporate policies that is specific to a business unit

You decide the text message to display and whether or not to display it as a clickable link to the corporate policy. You also decide whether or not to enforce workers' acknowledgment and acceptance of corporate policies by including a check box before the text message that must be selected. These decisions are made on the Create or Edit Expenses System Options page.

To navigate to the All Business Units section:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Expenses System Options
2. On the Manage Expenses System Options page, Corporate Options for Expense Report subsection, select the **Enable terms and agreements** check box.
3. Select the **Enable corporate policy URL** check box.

To navigate to the Specific Business Units section:


1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - a. Offering: Financials
  - b. Functional Area: Expenses
  - c. Task: Manage Expenses System Options
2. On the Manage Expenses System Options page, Specific Business Units section, select and click a specific business unit.
3. On the Edit Expenses System Options page, select the Corporate Options for Expense Report tab.
4. From the Enable Terms and Agreements choice list, select an option.
5. From the Enable Corporate Policy URL choice list, select an option.

Navigation to a specific business unit: **Setup and Maintenance > Search: Manage Expenses System Options > Click Manage Expenses System Options link > Manage Expenses System Options page > Specific Business Units section > Select and click a specific business unit > Edit Expenses System Options page > Select the Corporate Options for Expense Report tab > Enable Terms and Agreements choice list and the Enable Corporate Policy URL choice list.**

## Displaying User-Defined Terms and Agreements Text

You have several options to consider before you decide what and how to display terms and agreements text.

The following table contains several combinations of selecting or deselecting terms and agreements text with or without a corporate policy URL. The table also describes the resulting text and links that are displayed on the Create and Edit Expense Report page and on the Welcome page. The selections contained in the table are made on the Manage Expenses System Options setup page for all business units.

 **Tip:** You can make the same combination of selections for specific business units with the same resulting text and links displayed on the Create Expense Report Page and on the Welcome Page. Instead of selecting check boxes, you select options from a choice list. When you make choices on the Edit Expenses System Option page, you select options from the Enable Terms and Agreements choice list and from the Enable Corporate Policy URL choice list.

Enable Terms and Agreements Check Box	Corporate Policy Choice List	Enable Corporate Policy URL Check Box	URL Field	Resulting Text and Links Displayed on the Create Expense Report Page and the Welcome Page
Selected	Default option selected	Selected	URL Specified	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check box visible before text.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◦ A worker must select the check box to acknowledge acceptance of the corporate policies before submitting an expense report.</li></ul></li><li>• Text: I have read and accept the corporate travel and expense policies.</li><li>• Clickable link that opens to your company's travel and expense policies document.</li><li>• A clickable link, Corporate Policies, appears on the Welcome page that opens</li></ul>

Enable Terms and Agreements Check Box	Corporate Policy Choice List	Enable Corporate Policy URL Check Box	URL Field	Resulting Text and Links Displayed on the Create Expense Report Page and the Welcome Page
				to your company's travel and expense policies document.
Selected	User-defined option selected	Selected	URL Specified	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check box visible before text. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A worker must select the check box to acknowledge acceptance of the corporate policies before submitting an expense report.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Text: User-defined text.</li> <li>Clickable link that opens to a document specified by the URL.</li> <li>A clickable link, Corporate Policies, appears on the Welcome page that opens to your company's travel and expense policies document.</li> </ul>
Deselected	N/A	Selected	URL Specified	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No check box visible before text.</li> <li>Text: Corporate Policies.</li> <li>Clickable link that opens to a document specified by the URL.</li> <li>A clickable link, Corporate Policies, appears on the Welcome page that opens to your company's travel and expense policies document.</li> </ul>
Selected	User-defined option selected	Selected	Not Applicable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check box visible before text.</li> </ul>

Enable Terms and Agreements Check Box	Corporate Policy Choice List	Enable Corporate Policy URL Check Box	URL Field	Resulting Text and Links Displayed on the Create Expense Report Page and the Welcome Page
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Text: User-defined text.</li> <li>No link to corporate policies.</li> <li>No clickable link appears on the Welcome page.</li> </ul>
Selected	Not Applicable	Selected	Not Applicable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No check box visible in expense report.</li> <li>No link to corporate policies.</li> <li>No clickable link appears on the Welcome page.</li> </ul>
Selected	Not Applicable	Selected	URL Specified	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No check box visible in expense report.</li> <li>Clickable link that opens to a document specified by the URL.</li> <li>A clickable link, Corporate Policies, appears on the Welcome page that opens to your company's travel and expense policies document.</li> </ul>

## Creating Lookup Codes for User-Defined Terms and Agreements Text

To create user-defined corporate policy compliance text that is displayed on the Create and Edit Expense Report page, perform the following steps:

- In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Task: Define Lookups
- Click the Manage Standard Lookups link.
- On the Manage Standard Lookups page, Search section, enter ORA\_EXM\_TERMS\_AGRMT in the **Lookup Type** field and click **Search**. The ORA\_EXM\_TERMS\_AGRMT lookup type appears, along with its associated lookup codes.
- In the ORA\_EXM\_TERMS\_AGRMT: Lookup Codes section, click the **New (+)** icon to add a new row to the table.
- In the **Lookup Code** field, you can enter a unique value, such as **Business Unit 1**.
- In the **Display Sequence** field, enter the sequence in which you want the meanings to display.
- Select the **Enabled** check box to enable the lookup code.

8. In the **Meaning** field, enter a business term that defines the lookup code. The meaning of the lookup codes are displayed in sequential order when you enable terms and agreements.
9. In the **Description** field, enter a short description for the lookup code meaning. Whatever you enter for the description is displayed when you hover over a value on the choice list.
10. Click **Save** or **Save and Close**.

#### Related Topics

- [Overview of Lookups](#)

## Options for Configuring Expense Policies

To enforce compliance with your company's expense policies, you can specify any of the following options:

- Receipt required
- Corporate card usage
- Conversion rate

### Specifying a Receipt Required Policy

If your accounts payable department requires a receipt for each expense, then you must specify the following for each expense type that you define on the Create Expense Type page:

- A receipt requirement rule that reflects your company's receipt policy. A receipt can be required for cash only or for corporate card and cash.
- An expense amount, over which a receipt is required
- Warning and error tolerance percentages so the application can warn the user, if opted, of a receipt required policy violation or, in the case of an error, actually prevent submission of the expense report

Warnings are tracked by the application. You can view them in the Expense Items section on the Edit Expense Report page. Errors aren't tracked because they prevent submission of an expense report.

### Specifying a Corporate Card Usage Policy

You can set up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards. These policies increase your control of the cards by enforcing compliance with the usage policies.

You can specify corporate card usage policies in the Edit Corporate Card Usage Policy dialog box by specifying cash limits for expense categories. A cash limit is a cash ceiling, over which an employee must use a corporate card to pay for an expense. An expense category is a grouping of expense types. For example, the expense category of Airfare includes the following expense types: International Air and Domestic Air.


You must also specify tolerance percentages for warnings or errors as they relate to the cash limits for the expense categories. The following table illustrates how the warning and error tolerance percentages work for corporate card usage policies.

Cash Limit for Expense Category of Car Rental	Warning Tolerance Percentage	Warning Amount	Error Tolerance Percentage	Error Amount
\$100	5%	$\$100 + \$5 = \$105.$	10%	$\$100 + \$10 = \$110.$

Cash Limit for Expense Category of Car Rental	Warning Tolerance Percentage	Warning Amount	Error Tolerance Percentage	Error Amount
		The warning tolerance is \$100 up to \$105. Over \$105, the user sees a warning.		The error tolerance is over \$105 up to \$110. Over \$110, the application prevents the user from submitting the expense report.

If the employee enters a cash amount over \$105 for a car rental on the expense report, a warning displays, if opted, that reminds the employee to use a corporate card, instead of cash, for car rental charges over \$100. Warnings are tracked by the application. You can view them in the Expense Items section on the Edit Expense Report page.

If the employee enters a cash amount over \$110 for a car rental on the expense report, the application prevents submission of the expense report. Therefore, errors aren't tracked by the application.

 **Note:** If no cash limits are defined, you can submit cash expenses of any amount.


## Specifying a Conversion Rate Policy

You can define conversion rate behavior for each business unit in your company. These definitions enable you to enforce conversion rate policies and to validate the conversion rates that employees enter for foreign currency receipts. If you enter a conversion rate value in an expense report, or override a defaulted value, the value you enter is validated against the current conversion rate definitions.

 **Note:** Conversion rate behavior applies only to cash expenses, not to corporate card expenses.

You can specify the following conversion rate behavior on the Edit Conversion Rates and Policies page:

- Type of conversion rate, whether **Corporate**, **Spot**, or **User**
- Whether you want the conversion rate to default onto a newly created expense report

 **Note:** The default conversion rate is only applicable to cash transactions.

- Warning and error tolerance percentages so the application knows when to warn the user, if opted, of a conversion rate policy violation or, in the case of an error, actually prevent submission of the expense report
- Warning and error tolerance percentages, if opted, for specific currencies

The following table illustrates how warning and error tolerance percentages work for conversion rate policies.

Conversion Rate	Warning Tolerance Percentage	Warning Tolerance	Error Tolerance Percentage	Error Tolerance
Conversion Rate Type = Corporate where 1 GBP = 1.579 USD.  For this example, the employee reports expenses on the expense report in GBP, but is reimbursed in USD.	5%	1.579 + .07895 = 1.65795  The warning tolerance is 1.579 USD up to 1.65795. If the user enters a conversion rate over 1.65795, a warning displays.	10%	1.579 + .1579 = 1.7369  The error tolerance is over 1.65795 up to 1.7369. If the user enters a conversion rate over 1.7369, the application prevents the user from

Conversion Rate	Warning Tolerance Percentage	Warning Tolerance	Error Tolerance Percentage	Error Tolerance
				submitting the expense report.

If the employee enters a cash amount for a meal of 25 GBP on the expense report and indicates a conversion rate over 1.65795, a warning displays, if opted, that reminds the employee to use a conversion rate less than 1.65795. Warnings are tracked by the application. You can view them in the Expense Items section on the Edit Expense Report page.

If the employee enters a cash amount for a meal of 25 GBP on the expense report and indicates a conversion rate over 1.7369, the application prevents submission of the expense report. Errors aren't tracked by the application.

 **Note:** If a conversion rate isn't defined for the applicable reimbursement currency in Oracle Fusion General Ledger, the application can't enforce the conversion rate policy.

## Expense Category-Specific Fields

An expense category is a broad application-defined expense classification, such as Accommodations, Airfare, Car Rental, Meals, and Entertainment. Each expense category has fields associated with it, known as category-specific fields. For example, Accommodations is an expense category that has the following category-specific fields: Merchant Name and Checkout Date. Similarly, the Entertainment expense category has the category-specific field of Merchant Name. You can capture additional expense information for each expense category by optionally enabling the category-specific fields provided with the application. The category-specific fields are visible in the expense report based on the display action you set. You can set the display action for each category-specific field as follows:

- **Hidden:** the field isn't displayed.
- **Required:** the field is displayed for each expense item in the expense category and the user is required to enter data.
- **Optional:** the field is displayed for each expense item in the expense category, but the user isn't required to enter data.


You can enable the display action for the category-specific fields in each expense category by business unit. The fields you enable display for all expense reports for the selected business unit.

## How You Capture Tax-Related Information in Expense Reports

You can display tax-related fields in expense reports for the purpose of capturing tax-related information. To capture tax-related information, you must enable the option to display tax-related fields in expense reports. Select the **Display tax fields on expense report** check box on the Edit Tax Fields page. Then, for each business unit, define the display action of each tax-related field. You can define the display action of tax-related fields for all locations and then define exception display action for specific countries. For example, **Merchant Name** and **Taxpayer ID** are tax-related fields for which you can define display action.

The display actions available for each tax-related field are as follows:

- **Hidden:** Tax-related field isn't displayed in the expense report.
- **Optional:** Tax-related field is displayed for each expense item in the expense category, but the user isn't required to enter data.
- **Required:** Tax-related field is displayed for each expense item in the expense category and the user is required to enter data

 **Note:** If you set the display action for the fields in each expense category at the business unit level, then the enabled fields appear in all expense reports for the given business unit.

## Options for Showing or Hiding the Tax Classification Code

Whether to show or hide the Tax Classification Code choice list from employees on the UI is a management decision based on your company's practices. Some companies let their employees assign a tax classification code to their expenses. Others don't want employees to have that ability. You can choose from the following options:

- Show the Tax Classification Code on the UI
- Hide the Tax Classification Code from the UI
- Hide the Tax Classification Code from the UI and assign it on the back end

### Show the Tax Classification Code on the UI

The following table describes how to show the Tax Classification Code choice list on the UI.

Hide or Show Option	Edit Tax Fields Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Type Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Item Page--Expense Entry
Show the Tax Classification Code choice list on the UI.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implementor selects the Display tax fields on expense report check box.</li> <li>• Implementor selects Optional or Required from the Tax Classification Code choice list.</li> </ul>	Not applicable.	Employees select an option from the Tax Classification Code choice list when creating an expense report.


### Hide the Tax Classification Code from the UI

The following table describes how to hide the Tax Classification Code choice list from the UI.

Hide or Show Option	Edit Tax Fields Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Type Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Item Page--Expense Entry
Hide the Tax Classification Code choice list from the UI.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implementor selects the Display tax fields on expense report check box.</li> </ul>	Not applicable.	Tax Classification Code choice list is not visible for employees to select from when creating an expense report.



Hide or Show Option	Edit Tax Fields Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Type Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Item Page--Expense Entry
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implementor selects Hidden from the Tax Classification Code choice list.</li> </ul>		

 **Tip:** When the Display tax fields on expense report option is selected, the Location field becomes mandatory on the Create Expense Item page.

## Hide the Tax Classification Code from the UI and Assign it on the Back End

The following table describes an alternate option to hide the Tax Classification Code choice list from the UI and assign the tax classification code on the back end.

Hide or Show Option	Edit Tax Fields Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Type Page--Setup and Maintenance	Create Expense Item Page--Expense Entry
Hide the Tax Classification Code choice list from the UI and assign the tax classification code on the back end.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implementor selects the Display tax fields on expense report check box.</li> <li>Implementor selects Hidden from the Tax Classification Code choice list.</li> </ul>	Implementor assigns the same or a different tax classification code to each expense type.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tax Classification Code choice list is not visible.</li> <li>Tax classification code is automatically applied behind the scenes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To the expense item when the user saves the page.</li> <li>To Oracle Fusion Payables.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## How You Capture Company-Specific Information

You can configure Oracle Fusion Expenses to capture company-specific information about expense reports for each expense by enabling descriptive flexfields provided at the expense type level. A descriptive flexfield is a configurable field that captures additional information. For each expense type, you can capture up to 15 fields of additional information. This can be context-sensitive information based on the expense type or information that is collected across expense types called global descriptive flexfields.

To enable the capture of additional company-specific information in expense reports:


1. Set up descriptive flexfields.
2. Enable descriptive flexfields.

### Set Up Descriptive Flexfields

Set up the descriptive flexfield, EXM\_EXPENSES, that is provided by the application. You can enter expense types and fields you want to show for each expense type on the Manage Descriptive Flexfields for Expense Reports page.

To implement context-sensitive or global descriptive flexfields in Expenses, you must:

- Identify expense types on the line level for which you want to capture information and the fields you want to add for each expense type. These fields are context-sensitive descriptive flexfields.
- Identify the common information that you want to capture across expense types. These fields are global descriptive flexfields.
- Determine how you want the context-sensitive and global descriptive flexfields to render to the user.

 **Note:** The expense type you enter in the descriptive flexfield definition must exactly match the expense types you defined in the expense templates. Otherwise the descriptive flexfield won't be visible.

## Enable Descriptive Flexfields

To capture the additional information defined in the descriptive flexfields, you must enable descriptive flexfields in the expense report. You can set the system option, **Enable Descriptive Flexfields**, to **Yes** on the Manage Expenses System Options page. By default, this option is set to **No**.

You can set this option at the implementation level on the Manage Expenses System Options page, which applies to all business units. Alternatively, you can specify exceptions for specific business units on the Create System Options: Specific Business Unit dialog box.

## How You Create Expense Report Header Descriptive Flexfields

You can configure Oracle Expenses to capture company-specific information for each expense report by enabling descriptive flexfields at the expense report level. A descriptive flexfield is a configurable field that captures additional information. For each expense report, you can capture up to 27 additional fields of information.

The types of descriptive flexfields that you can create include:

- Global
- Business unit-specific
- User-defined, context-sensitive

For each type of descriptive flexfield you create, you determine how you want the fields to render. To begin, in Setup and Maintenance on the Manage Descriptive Flexfields for Expense Reports page, select the predefined descriptive flexfield named **Expense Report Header** and click the **Edit** icon. This predefined descriptive flexfield enables you to create and place descriptive flexfields of your choice in the header section of expense reports.

## Creating Global Descriptive Flexfields


Global descriptive flexfields identify the common information that you want to capture across all expense reports. On the Edit Descriptive Flexfield: Expenses Report Header page in the Global Segments section, you can create global descriptive flexfields according to your business requirements.

## Creating Business Unit-Specific Descriptive Flexfields

Business unit-specific descriptive flexfields identify the common information that you want to capture across a specific business unit. On the Edit Descriptive Flexfield: Expenses Report Header page in the Context Segment section, do the following:

1. In the Prompt field, enter **Business Unit**.
2. From the Value Set choice list, select the predefined value set named **ORA\_EXM\_BUSINESS\_UNIT**.  
This value set contains the names of all business units in your organization.


Then, create a context for each business unit that requires specific descriptive flexfields by clicking **Manage Contexts**. For example, if you are creating descriptive flexfields for the business unit, **Vision Operations**, then you must also create a context named **Vision Operations**.

 **Note:** The business unit name you enter as the context display name must match the business unit name that you select from the Value Set choice list. Otherwise, the business unit-specific descriptive flexfield that you create won't work.

## Creating User-Defined Descriptive Flexfields


User-defined descriptive flexfields identify context sensitive information you want to capture for each expense report. For example, suppose a user-defined context is Expense Purpose, which captures additional descriptive information related to Sales, Training, Relocation, or Miscellaneous. On the Edit Descriptive Flexfield: Expenses page in the Context Segment section, do the following:


1. In the Prompt field, enter the user-defined context, **Expense Purpose**.
2. From the Value Set choice list, select a value set that contains the values for which you intend to create descriptive flexfields.

 **Note:** You may need to create a value set if one doesn't already exist.

The value set contains the names of various contexts of interest.

Then, create a context for each business unit that requires specific descriptive flexfields by clicking **Manage Contexts**. The user-defined name you enter as the context display name must match the name that you select from the Value Set choice list. Otherwise, the user-defined descriptive flexfield that you create won't work.

 **Note:** In the expense report header, you can create either business unit-specific descriptive flexfields or user-defined descriptive flexfields. You cannot have both in the expense report header at the same time. Global descriptive flexfields can always appear with either business unit-specific descriptive flexfields or user-defined descriptive flexfields.

 **Note:** Display of expense report level descriptive flexfields isn't dependent on the **Enable Descriptive Flexfield** option on the Manage Expenses System Options page.

### Related Topics

- [Overview of Flexfields](#)
- [Overview of Flexfield Configuration](#)

- [Flexfield Components](#)

## Expense Types

An expense type is a potential expense that employees or contingent workers can incur. Expense types are granular expenses. For example, if Accommodations is an expense category, then possible expense types are Hotel, Motel, and Bed and Breakfast.

Setting up expense types in Expenses includes the following actions:

- Creating expense types
- Itemizing expense types
- Enabling project-enabled expense types
- Enabling automatic population of the tax classification code

## Creating Expense Types

When you create an expense type on the Create Expense Type page, you assign an account to the expense type. This enables the application to allocate expenses to a specific account. Additionally, you can specify whether receipts are required when users submit expense reports for approval. You can also require submission of a receipt over a specified amount. Receipt submission requirements can be set up for cash expenses, corporate card expenses, or both.

After creating expense types, associate them with corporate card expense types on the Card Expense Type Mapping tab of the Create Expense Template page. Corporate card expense types come predefined with Expenses or you can add them as additional lookups. Associating defined expense types with corporate card expense types enables Expenses to correctly derive expense types during the corporate card transaction upload process.

## Itemizing Expense Types


Itemization is the breaking down of charges in a granular fashion so they can be applied to specific accounts. Itemization applies to both corporate card expense types and cash.

You set up itemization on the Itemization tab of the Create or Edit Expense Type page according to your company's requirements. You decide whether to enable, disable, or require itemization by employees or contingent workers when they create an expense item during expense entry. During itemization setup, you also decide one of the following:

- Whether expense types you define are eligible during expense entry for itemization only.
- Whether expense types you define are also available as an independent, single expense type.

 **Note:** When itemization is set up as Required or Enabled, include at least one expense type on the Itemization tab of the Create Expense Type page.

Specify whether a card expense type is a candidate for automatic itemization on the Card Expense Type Mapping tab of the Create Expense Template page. If you enable automatic itemization for an expense type, you must then select a default itemization expense type. A default itemization expense type is one to which expenses are automatically populated when they are outside the defined itemization. For example, suppose a deploying company maps corporate card expense types to expense types and identifies a default itemization expense type called Miscellaneous. When the corporate card feed file is uploaded to Expenses, any unmapped expense types default to the Miscellaneous expense type.


 **Note:** If automatic itemization is disabled for a specific expense type, then the expense type is not automatically itemized for you.

## Enabling Project-Enabled Expense Types

Project-enabled expense types are associated with a project expenditure type in Oracle Fusion Project Costing if the user is allowed to enter project information. For example, a project-enabled expense type enables a consultant to allocate his consulting expenses to a specific project and its tasks during expense creation report.

To set up project-enabled expense types on the Project Expenditure Type Mapping tab of the Create Expense Type page, select the **Enable projects** check box. You must also select a default project expenditure type, which is a project expense type to which unspecified project unit expenses are assigned. Additionally, you can specify whether receipts are required for project expenses when the user submits an expense report.

The project-enabled expense type can be mapped to a specific project unit and a project expenditure type on an exception basis. It's the association of a project-enabled expense type with a project unit and a project expenditure type that derives accounting in Oracle Projects Costing.

 **Note:** Before you can project-enable expense types, you must perform the following prerequisite setup in Oracle Fusion Project Foundation:

- Project unit: A unique identifier of a group of projects that are managed as a unit.
- Project expenditure type: A classification of cost.

## Enabling Automatic Population of the Tax Classification Code

When you create an expense type on the Create Expense Type page, you can specify the tax classification code that applies to the expense type. The tax classification code specified during the setup of an expense type is automatically populated onto the Create Expense Item page during expense entry. If necessary, the user can override the specified tax classification code when creating an expense item if the tax field is enabled on the report.

## Options for Controlling the Behavior of Expense Fields

You can control the behavior of certain fields on the Create Expense Item page. You can choose to update the following modifiable expense fields at the most granular level or at a less granular level:

- Description
- Merchant Name
- Number of Days
- Expense Location

If you want to modify expense fields on specific UI pages, you can set up the modifiable expense fields at the most granular level. The most granular setup occurs at the expense type level.

When you set up modifiable expense fields, you can specify expense field behavior for:

- All expense types associated with an expense template
- Specific expense types

Alternately, you can perform a less granular implementation of the modifiable expense fields with the setups for:

- Expense policies
- Tax fields
- Expense fields by category
- The profile option, EXM\_LINE\_DESCR\_REQUIRED, referred to as Description Line Required

A less granular level implementation is setup that is not dependent on a specific expense type.

## Modifiable Expense Fields Displayed by Expense Category

The **Description** field and the **Expense Location** field display in all expense categories. However, the **Merchant Name** field and the **Number of Days** field only display for certain categories.

The following exception table summarizes the default visibility of the **Merchant Name** field and the **Numbers of Days** field when you initially receive the application.

Expense Category	Default Display of Merchant Name Field	Default Display of Number of Days Field
Accommodations	Yes	Yes
Airfare	Yes	No
Car Rental	Yes	Yes
Entertainment	Yes	No
Meals	Yes	No
Mileage	No	No
Miscellaneous	Yes	Yes
Per Diem	No	No

If you want to change the behavior of any of the modifiable fields, you can do so.

## All Expense Types Associated with an Expense Template

On the Expense Fields tab of the Create Expense Report Template page, you can set a value of **Null**, **Hidden**, **Optional**, or **Required** for the following modifiable expense fields:

- Description
- Expense Location
- Number of Days
- Merchant Name

When you create a new expense template, the default value for all of the preceding modifiable expense fields is **Hidden**. A **Null** value indicates that no setup has occurred and that you do not intend to use the expense template to specify the behavior of the modifiable expense field.

The values you select for the modifiable expense fields at the expense template level are applicable to all expense types available in the expense template. You can set up any exceptions at the expense type level.

## Specific Expense Types

On the Expense Fields tab of the Create Expense Type page, you can set a value of **Use setup from expense template**, **Hidden**, **Optional**, or **Required** for the following modifiable expense fields:

- Description
- Expense Location
- Number of Days
- Merchant Name

The default value is **Use setup from expense template**. If you retain the default value for any of the modifiable expense fields and the expense template setup is **Null** for any of the modifiable expense fields, it means that no setup exists at the expense template level or at the expense type level.

On the Policies tab of the Create Expense Type page, you can assign an expense policy to an expense type. Different expense policies require you to enter information in different expense fields. Contradictions can arise between an expense field value for an expense policy and the expense field setup at the expense type level or at the expense template level. If a contradiction occurs, the application asks you to either change the expense field value or select a different expense policy.

## Setup Precedence of Modifiable Expense Fields

Expenses follows a precedence when multiple setups exist for modifiable expense fields. For example, if you set the **Number of Days** field at the expense type level to **Optional** and the same field at the expense template level is set to **Required**, the application complies with the expense type level setting.

The following table contains the setup precedence of the modifiable fields and their corresponding setup object, setup task, and setup page.

Setup Precedence of Modifiable Fields	Setup Up and Setup and Maintenance Task	Page
1 = Highest Precedence	Expense Type Manage Expense Report Templates	Create Expense Type Page, Expense Fields tab
2	Expense Template Manage Expense Report Templates	Create Expense Report Template Page, Expense Fields tab
3	Expense Policies Manage Policies by Expense Category	Create Expense Policy
4	Line Description Required Profile Option Manage Profile Options	Manage Profile Options

Setup Precedence of Modifiable Fields	Setup Up and Setup and Maintenance Task	Page
5	Tax Fields Manage Tax Fields	Edit Tax Fields
6	Expense Fields by Category Manage Expense Fields by Category	Manage Expense Fields by Category

## Options for Creating Expense Templates

An expense template is a grouping of related expense types that are defined for a specific business unit. Examples of groupings of related expense types include expense templates for travel, education, and relocation. Expense templates enable companies to control the expense types visible to each business unit. Additionally, if your company processes card transactions and you want expense types automatically assigned during card transaction processing, you must set a default template.

When creating expense templates, it's advisable to consider the following actions:


- Using expense templates
- Defining default expense templates
- Inactivating expense templates

## Using Expense Templates

When employees create expense items in the **Create Expense Item** dialog box to add to new or existing reports, they select a specific expense template.

The following rules apply to expense templates:

- Each business unit can have multiple expense templates associated with it.
- Expense templates cannot be shared across business units.

 **Note:** If your company operates in multiple countries, you must create one expense template per business unit. If your users use multiple languages within a business unit, then you must implement expense templates in each of those languages.

## Defining Default Expense Templates

A default expense template is the first expense template that you create on the Create Expense Template page with corporate card expense type mapping. The application automatically sets the first template as the default template. This action occurs whether or not you select the **Set as default** check box on the Create Expense Template page. You can also change the default template, as long as the one you are changing to has corporate card expense type mapping.


The purpose of a default expense template is to automatically populate expense types to credit card transactions. Thus, when employees or contingent workers create expense reports, they can see the expense types assigned to the corporate card transactions. The default expense template uses the corporate card expense type mapping to associate expense types



with the corporate card transactions. This association occurs when the corporate card feed file containing corporate card charges is uploaded to Expenses.

The following rules apply to default expense templates:


- Each business unit can have only one default expense template.
- For any business unit, you can have a default expense template with additional expense templates.
- For any business unit, you can have a default expense template with no additional expense templates.

 **Note:** If neither a default expense template nor an expense template is associated with a business unit, you can't implement Expenses.

## Inactivating Expense Templates

Deploying companies do not typically inactivate expense templates because they can't use them after the end date. It's therefore advisable to leave the **Effective End Date** field blank, unless you intend to retire the expense template. Any expenses that are incurred after an end date can't be reported using an inactivated expense template. It's more likely that you would inactivate individual expense types, rather than inactivate an expense template.

To inactivate an expense template, enter a date in the **Effective End Date** field on the Create Expense Template page. You can also inactivate individual expense types in the same way on the Create or Edit Expense Type page. However, the expense template end date overrides the end date for individual expense types. Note that employees can still use inactivated templates to enter expenses on a report for the period in which the expense report was active.

 **Caution:** If you decide to inactivate a default expense template, then no corporate card mapping occurs if no other default expense template is identified.

## How Expense Item Accounting Is Derived

This topic provides an example of the expense item accounting flow so you can understand how expense item accounting works. With this understanding, you can set up default expense accounts properly to generate valid expense account combinations.

Before you can derive distributions, you must:

- Define default expense accounts in your human resources application for each person who uses Oracle Expenses Cloud.
- Decide whether or not to give employees the capability of changing the company segment and the cost center segment
- Decide whether or not to give employees the capability of changing all segments in the default expense account
- Set up the natural expense account for expense types in the expense template.

## Settings That Affect Expense Item Accounting

The following setups affect expense item accounting:

- Default expense account set up

Every person who uses Expenses must be set up with a default expense account in your human resources application.

 **Note:** If you don't set up default expense accounts for all users, they can't submit expense reports.

- Natural expense account setup

When you create an expense report template on the Create Expense Report Template page, you set up expense types and specify the natural expense account for each expense type. The natural expense account is a segment in the default expense account.

- Optional expense accounting privilege assignment

You can assign the expense accounting privilege named Override Expense Account Allocation for all employees. Then, they can change the Company and Cost Center segments of the default expense account on the Create or Edit Expense Item page.

To set up the Override Expense Account Allocation privilege, navigate to: **Setup and Maintenance > Tools > Security Console**.

- Optional accounting profile option setup

You can set the accounting profile option named EXM\_ALLOW\_FULL\_ACCT\_OVERRIDE to **Yes** for all or specific employees. Then, they can change any segment of the default expense account on the Create or Edit Expense Item page.

To set the accounting profile option for all employees, navigate to: Setup and Maintenance and search for and select Manage Administrator Profile Values. Search for the profile option named EXM\_ALLOW\_FULL\_ACCT\_OVERRIDE in the **Profile Option Code** field and set the Profile Value choice list to **Yes** at the site, product, or user level.

## How Expense Item Accounting Is Derived

The example in the following table describes how expense item accounting works.

Step	Action	Initial Expense Account	Resulting Default Expense Account
1.	An employee's default expense account is set up in the human resources application where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 10 = Company</li><li>• 520 = Department</li><li>• First set of four zeros = Natural Expense Account</li></ul>	01-520-0000-0000-000	Not applicable.
2.	Employee creates an expense report and selects the expense type of Hotel.  Hotel = 7670 in the Travel expense template.	01-520-0000-0000-000	01-520-7670-0000-000

Step	Action	Initial Expense Account	Resulting Default Expense Account
3.	<p>Employee has the expense accounting privilege of Override Expense Account Allocation assigned him.</p> <p>Employee sees the following segments on the Create Expense Item page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Company segment 01. Employee changes 01 to 02.</li><li>• Department segment 520. Employee changes 520 to 540.</li></ul>	01-520-7670-0000-000	02-540-7670-0000-000
4.	<p>Accounting profile option named EXM_ALLOW_FULL_ACCT_OVERRI is enabled.</p> <p>Employee sees the entire default expense account with all the segments on the Create Expense Item page. He can change any or all segments.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Segment 0000. Employee changes 0000 to 3251.</li><li>• Segment 000. Employee changes 000 to 478.</li></ul>	02-540-7670-0000-000	02-540-7670-3251-478

If you change accounting segments on the Create or Edit Expense Item page, the change is applied to the Expenses accounting distributions in the background. When the expense report is processed for reimbursement, Oracle Payables Cloud pulls the expense item accounting information from Expenses to generate accounting. The resulting invoice or payment request reflects the accounting.

## Entertainment Expense Policy

An entertainment expense policy is a policy that you define to manage entertainment and gift expenses for which employees are reimbursed. Your company must comply with laws and regulations and guard against inappropriate expenditures that may arise when employees entertain or give gifts to customers. To assist with this effort, you can define entertainment spending rules, enable entertainment policy violations, and capture information about event attendees and gift recipients.

When you define an entertainment expense policy, you perform the following actions:

- Define types of rate limits and number of currencies
- Determine whether to include attendee types as the rate determinant
- Determine whether to enforce the entertainment expense policy and how
- Specify attendee-related information to capture
- Define rate limit amounts

- Associate the entertainment expense policy with an expense type

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:


- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category

To navigate to the Create Entertainment Policy page, select **Entertainment** from the Create Policy choice list.

## Define Types of Rate Limits and Number of Currencies

In the Rate Definition section on the Create Entertainment Policy page, you decide whether to enable rate limits for the entertainment expense policy. If you enable them, you can:

- Select a type of rate limit, whether yearly, by instance, or both.
- Specify whether the entertainment expense policy rate is defined by a single currency or multiple currencies.

 **Note:** If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

## Determine Whether to Include Attendee Types as the Rate Determinant

A rate determinant for an entertainment policy determines the policy rate amount limit that an employee can be reimbursed for entertainment or gift expenses. An entertainment expense policy has one rate determinant, which is attendee types.

In the Rate Determinants section on the Create Entertainment Policy page, you decide whether to include types of attendees as the rate determinant. To include them, you can define different policy rates for different attendee types, such as:

- Public sector attendees
- Private sector attendees

## Determine Whether to Enforce the Entertainment Expense Policy and How

In the Policy Enforcement section on the Create Entertainment Policy page, you decide whether to enforce the entertainment expense policy. To enforce it, select one of the following:

- Reimburse only the rate limit amount when an expense exceeds the defined rate. For example, if the rate limit is 25 USD for a gift to a customer and an employee spends 30, he is reimbursed 25.
- Generate a policy violation when an expense exceeds the defined rate.
  - Warning: A percentage is used to calculate a warning. The warning tolerance amount is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Policy Rate} * (1 + \text{Warning Tolerance} / 100)$$

If you submit an expense in a report that has an amount that is greater than the warning tolerance, you will see a warning if the **Display warning to user** check box is selected in the Policy Enforcement section on the Create Entertainment Policy page.

 **Note:** A warning is always displayed to the approver, whether or not the **Display warning to user** check box is selected.

- Error: A percentage is used to calculate an error. The error tolerance amount is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Policy Rate} * (1 + \text{Error Tolerance} / 100)$$

If you submit an expense in a report that has an amount that is greater than the error tolerance, you're prevented from submitting the expense report.

## Specify Attendee-Related Information to Capture

You decide which of the following event attendee information to capture in the **Add Attendees** dialog box. You can do it by selecting any of the following check boxes in the Enable Attendee Information section on the Create Entertainment Policy page:

- **Require attendee amount:** If selected, employees are required to enter amounts that were actually spent on event attendees.
- **Require employee name:** If selected, employees are required to enter at least one employee as an event attendee.
- **Display employee attendee information:** If selected, an Employees section is visible in the **Add Attendees** dialog box.
- **Display nonemployee attendee information:** If selected, a Nonemployees section is visible in the **Add Attendees** dialog box.

## Define Rate Limit Amounts

After you finish defining the entertainment expense policy and save it, you can then define entertainment rate limit amounts in the **Create Rates** dialog box.

 **Note:** Rates with overlapping start and end dates are invalid.

## Associate the Entertainment Expense Policy with an Expense Type

Before you can associate the entertainment policy with an expense type, you must first activate the policy from the Manage Policies by Expense Category page. You can do it by selecting the policy and then selecting the Activate option from the Actions menu.

The final sequence of steps is as follows:

1. On the Create Expense Report Template page, create a template for entertainment or select an existing entertainment template.
2. On the Expense Types tab on the Create Expense Report Template page, create an entertainment expense type.
3. In the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, create an entertainment expense type.
4. On the Policies tab in the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select the entertainment expense policy, specify the start date, and optionally the end date.

After the entertainment policy rate is set, a violation is raised when an employee submits a report that contains an expense that violates the policy.

## Set Up an Accommodations Expense Policy

Your company can set up and enforce accommodations expense policies to help control, manage, and reduce spending for accommodations expenses. Two examples of accommodations expense policies are the enforcement of a hotel expense limit of 200 USD per day and the enforcement of hotels that are on the company's preferred merchant list.


This topic covers the following aspects of setting up an accommodations expense policy.

- Setting Up an Accommodations Policy
- Setting Up Policy Violations
- Completing the Accommodations Rate Spreadsheet
- Associating the Accommodations Expense Policy with an Expense Type

### Setting Up an Accommodations Policy

The following procedure enables you to set up an accommodations expense policy and complete the accommodations rate spreadsheet for uploading to the application.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
2. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select **Accommodations** from the Create Policy choice list.
3. On the Create Accommodations Expense Policy page in the Rate Definition section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Single currency** radio button.
  - b. Currency = **USD**.

 **Note:** If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

4. In the Rate Determinants section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Roles** check box.
  - b. Select the **Locations** check box.
  - c. Role Type = **Job**.
  - d. Select the **Geographical locations** check box.
5. In the Policy Enforcements section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Policy violation warning** check box.
  - b. Warning Tolerance Percentage = **10**.
  - c. Select the **Display warning to user** check box.
  - d. Select the **Prevent report submission** check box.
  - e. Error Tolerance Percentage = **20**.

The preceding accommodations expense policy says the following: The accommodations expense policy is set up with a single instance daily rate in US dollars, by job, by geographical location, and is enforced by a warning and error.

## Setting Up Policy Violations


You can set up policy violations for accommodations expense policies as shown in the following table.

Policy Violation	Application's Action	Effect	Calculation
Warning	Generates a warning policy violation when an accommodations expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	<p>You see a warning if you selected the <b>Display warning to user</b> check box.</p> <p>A warning is always displayed to the approver, whether or not you select the <b>Display warning to user</b> check box.</p>	Policy Rate * (1+Warning Tolerance/ 100)
Error	Generates an error policy violation when an accommodations expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	You see an error and you are prevented from submitting the accommodations expense.	Policy Rate * (1+Error Tolerance/ 100)

## Completing the Accommodations Rate Spreadsheet

To complete an accommodations rate spreadsheet, perform the following steps:

1. On the Create Accommodations Policy page, click the **Create Rate** button.
2. Download the predefined spreadsheet to your local drive for completion.

 **Note:** If you select rate determinants in the Rate Determinants section, you complete the predefined spreadsheet. If you don't select any rate determinants, you create accommodations rates in the **Create Rates** dialog box.

3. On the Create Accommodations Rates spreadsheet, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Role	Geographical Location	Daily Limit	Start Date
ACC500. Accounting Manager	All Others, San Francisco, CA, United States	200	1/1/2014
ACC500. Accounting Manager	All Others, New York, NY, United States	220	1/1/2014
ACC500. Accounting Manager	All Others, All Others, All Others, United States	185	1/1/2014
SAL600. Salesperson	All Others, San Francisco, CA, United States	195	1/1/2014
SAL600. Salesperson	All Others, New York, NY, United States	215	1/1/2014

Role	Geographical Location	Daily Limit	Start Date
SAL600. Salesperson	All Others, All Others, All Others, United States	170	1/1/2014
SAL700. Salesperson	All Others, San Francisco, CA, United States	250	1/1/2014
SAL700. Salesperson	All Others, New York, NY, United States	255	1/1/2014
SAL700. Salesperson	All Others, All Others, All Others, United States	222	1/1/2014
All Others	All Others, All Others, All Others, All Others	200	1/1/2014

4. Click the **Upload** button.

When rates are successfully uploaded, the policy status becomes valid. To use this rate policy for calculation of accommodations expenses, you must:

1. Activate the accommodations expense policy.
  - a. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select the accommodations expense policy you created and click the **Activate** button.
2. Assign the accommodations expense policy to an expense type.

## Assigning the Accommodations Expense Policy to an Expense Type

To assign the accommodations expense policy to an expense type, complete the following steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Expense Report Templates
2. On the Manage Expense Report Templates page, click the **Create** icon or select an applicable template for a business unit.
3. On the Create Expense Report Template page, create a template for accommodations expenses.
4. On the Expense Types tab click the **Create** icon to open the **Create Expense Type** dialog box.
5. In the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select Accommodations from the Category choice list.
6. On the Policies tab in the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select the accommodations expense policy you created, specify the start date, and optionally specify an end date.

## Set Up a Meals Expense Policy

Your company can set up and enforce meal expense policies to help control, manage, and reduce spending for meal expenses. Examples of scenarios where a meals expense policy is applicable include the following: a salesperson requests



reimbursement for a lunch with customers, a consultant requests reimbursement for meals on a business trip, an employee requests reimbursement for meals while attending an off-site workshop.


This topic covers the following aspects of setting up a meals expense policy.

- Setting Up a Meals Expense Policy
- Setting Up Policy Violations
- Completing the Meals Rate Spreadsheet
- Associating the Meals Expense Policy with an Expense Type

## Setting Up a Meals Expense Policy

The following procedure enables you to set up a meals expense policy and complete the meals rate spreadsheet for uploading to the application.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
2. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page select **Meals** from the Create Policy choice list.
3. On the Create Meals Expense Policy page in the Rate Definition section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Single instance limit** check box.
  - b. Select the **Single currency** radio button.
  - c. Currency = USD US Dollar

 **Note:** If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

4. In the Rate Determinants section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Role** check box.
  - b. Role Type = **Job**.
5. In the Policy Enforcements section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Policy violation warning** check box.
  - b. Warning Tolerance Percentage = **10**.
  - c. Select the **Display warning to user** check box.
  - d. Select the **Prevent report submission** check box.
  - e. Error Tolerance Percentage = **20**.

The preceding meals expense policy says the following: The meals expense policy is set up with a single instance rate in US dollars, by job, and is enforced by a warning and an error.

## Setting Up Policy Violations


You can set up policy violations for a meals expense policy as shown in the following table.

Policy Violation	Application's Action	Effect	Calculation
Warning	Generates a warning policy violation when a meals expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	You see a warning if you selected the <b>Display warning to user</b> check box.  A warning is always displayed to the approver, whether or not you select the <b>Display warning to user</b> check box.	Policy Rate * (1+Warning Tolerance/ 100)
Error	Generates an error policy violation when a meals expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	You see an error and you are prevented from submitting the meals expense report.	Policy Rate * (1+Error Tolerance/ 100)

## Completing the Meals Rate Spreadsheet

To complete a meals rate spreadsheet, perform the following steps.

1. On the Create Meals Policy page, click the **Create Rates** button.
2. Download the predefined spreadsheet to your local drive for completion.

 **Note:** If you select rate determinants in the Rate Determinants section, you complete the predefined spreadsheet. If you don't select any rate determinants, you create meals rates in the **Create Rates** dialog box.

3. On the Create Meals Rates spreadsheet, complete the fields contained in the following table.

Role	Single Instance Limit (USD)	Start Date
ACC500. Accounting Manager	120	1/2014
SAL600. Salesperson	150	1/2014
SAL700.Sales Manager	180	1/2014
All Others	150	1/2014

4. Click the **Upload** button.

When rates are successfully uploaded, the policy status is valid. To use the rates spreadsheet for calculation of meal expenses, you must:

1. Activate the meals expense policy.
  - a. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select the meals expense policy that you created and click the **Activate** button.
2. Assign the meals expense policy to an expense type.

## Assigning the Meals Expense Policy to an Expense Type

To assign the meals expense policy to an expense type, complete the following steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Expense Report Templates
2. On the Manage Expense Report Templates page, click the **Create** icon or select an applicable template for a business unit.
3. On the Create Expense Report Template page, create a template for meals expenses.
4. On the Expense Types tab, click the **Create** icon to open the Create Expense Type dialog box.
5. In the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select Meals from the Category choice list.
6. On the Policies tab in the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select the meals expense policy you created, specify the start date, and optionally specify an end date.

## Itemize Meals Expense Categories

You can itemize meals expense categories. Itemizing meals helps you capture the breakdown of meal expenses, such as tips and taxes.

You must have one of the following roles to enable meals itemization:

- Application Implementation Consultant
- Application Implementation Consultant Financial Administrator
- Expense Manager

To itemize a meal expense type, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Expense Report Templates
2. On the Manage Expense Report Templates page, select the applicable template and click the **Edit** icon.
3. On the Edit Expense Report Template page, Expense Types tab, select the meal expense type that you want to itemize and click the **Edit** icon.
4. On the Itemization tab, select one of the following values from the Itemization choice list:
  - o Enabled: to optionally enable itemization
  - o Required: to make itemization mandatory
5. Click the **Include** check box for the expense types that you want to make available for itemization.
6. Click **Save and Close**.

# Set Up an Airfare Policy

Your company can set up and enforce airfare expense policies to help control, manage, and reduce spending by employees for airfare. An example of a scenario where an airfare expense policy is applicable is when a consultant flies to Finland for a business trip and then submits an expense report for reimbursement of the airfare.

To set up an airfare policy, you perform the following steps:

1. Entering general information
2. Setting up airfare policy violations
3. Creating a flight class policy
4. Activating the airfare policy
5. Assigning the airfare policy to an expense type

## Entering General Information

To set up general information, complete the following steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
2. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select **Airfare** from the Create Policy choice list.
3. On the Create Flight Class Policy page, Flight Class Determinant section:
  - o The **Role** check box is already selected by default.
  - o From the Role Type choice list, select **Job**.

The preceding airfare policy says the following: The airfare policy is set up by job and a policy violation is enforced by a warning.

## Setting Up Airfare Policy Violations

In the Policy Enforcement section, accept the following defaults:

- Policy violation warning radio button
- Display warning to user check box.

The following table describes what employees see when you set up warning and error policy violations for an airfare policy.

	Application's Action	Effect
Warning	Generates a warning policy violation when an airfare expense violates the policy.	<p>You see a warning if you selected the Display warning to user check box.</p> <p>A warning is always displayed to the approver, whether or not you select the Display warning to user check box.</p>

	Application's Action	Effect
Error	Generates an error policy violation when an airfare expense violates the policy.	You see an error and you are prevented from submitting the expense report.

## Creating a Flight Class Policy

You can optionally create a flight class policy where you define which job roles can fly which flight classes based on flight duration or type of flight, whether domestic or international. An example of a flight class policy includes the following:

1. Vice Presidents and over who fly longer than 8 hours for an international flight can purchase a first class ticket.
2. Vice Presidents and under who fly less than 8 hours for a domestic flight must purchase economy class ticket.

## Activating the Airfare Policy

To use the airfare policy, you must:

1. Activate the airfare policy.
  - a. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
    - i. Offering: Financials
    - ii. Functional Area: Expenses
    - iii. Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
  - b. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select the airfare expense policy that you created and click **Activate**.
2. Assign the airfare policy to an expense type.

## Assigning the Airfare Policy to an Expense Type

To assign the airfare policy to an expense type, complete the following steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Expense Report Templates
2. On the Manage Expense Report Templates page, select an applicable template for a business unit or click the Create icon.
3. On the Create Expense Report Template page, create a template for Airfare expenses.
4. On the Expense Types tab, click the Create icon.
5. In the Create Expense Type dialog box, select **Airfare** from the Category choice list.
6. On the Policies tab in the Create Expense Type dialog box, select the Airfare policy you created, specify the start date, and optionally specify an end date.

## Set Up a Car Rental Policy

Your company can set up and enforce car rental expense policies to help control, manage, and reduce spending by employees for car rentals. An example of a scenario where a car rental expense policy is applicable is when a consultant rents a car during a business trip and then submits an expense report for reimbursement of the car rental.


To set up a car rental policy, you complete these steps:

1. Setting up a car rental policy
2. Setting up car rental policy violations
3. Completing the car rental rate spreadsheet
4. Activating the car rental policy
5. Assigning the car rental policy to an expense type

### Setting Up a Car Rental Policy

To set up a car rental policy, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
2. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, from the Create Policy choice list, select **Car Rental**.
3. On the Create Car Rental Policy page in the Rate Definition section:
  - a. Select the Single currency option.
  - b. From the Currency choice list, select **USD US Dollar**.

 **Note:** If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle General Ledger.

4. In the Rate Determinants section:
  - a. Select the Role check box.
  - b. From the Role Type choice list, select Job.


The preceding car rental policy says the following: The car rental policy is set up with a daily limit in US dollars, by job, and is enforced by a warning and an error.

### Setting Up Car Rental Policy Violations

To set up car rental policy violations, complete these steps in the Policy Enforcement section:

1. Select the Policy violation warning check box.
2. Enter 10 in the Warning Tolerance Percentage field.
3. Select the Display warning to user check box.
4. Select the Prevent report submission check box.
5. Enter 20 in the Error Tolerance Percentage field.


The following table describes what employees see when you set up warning and error policy violations, as well as the calculation used to derive the policy violation.

Policy Violation	Application's Action	Effect	Calculation
Warning	Generates a warning policy violation when a car rental expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	You see a warning if you selected the Display warning to user check box.	Policy Rate * (1+Warning Tolerance/ 100)
 <b>Note:</b> A warning is always displayed to the approver, whether or not you select the Display warning to user check box.			
Error	Generates an error policy violation when a car rental expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	You see an error and you are prevented from submitting the expense report.	Policy Rate * (1+Error Tolerance/ 100)

## Completing the Car Rental Rate Spreadsheet

To complete a car rental rate spreadsheet, complete these steps:

1. On the Create Car Rental Policy page, click **Create Rates**.
2. Download the predefined spreadsheet to your local drive for completion.

 **Tip:** If you select rate determinants in the Rate Determinants section, you complete the predefined spreadsheet. If you don't select any rate determinants, you create car rental rates in the Create Rates dialog box.

3. On the Create Car Rental Rates spreadsheet, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Role	Daily Sum Limit (USD)	Start Date
ACC500. Accounting Manager	100	1/2014
SAL600. Salesperson	120	1/2014
SAL700.Sales Manager	150	1/2014
All Others	90	1/2014

4. Click **Upload**.

When rates are successfully uploaded, the policy status is Valid.

## Activating the Car Rental Policy

To use the car rental rates spreadsheet for calculation of car rental expenses, you must:

1. Activate the car rental policy.
  - a. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following: Navigate: Setup and Maintenance > Manage Policies by Expense Category task > Go to Task > Manage Policies by Expense Category page.
    - Offering: Financials
    - Functional Area: Expenses
    - Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
  - b. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select the car rental policy that you created and click **Activate**.
2. Assign the car rental policy to an expense type.

## Assigning the Car Rental Policy to an Expense Type

To assign the car rental policy to an expense type, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Expense Report Templates
2. On the Manage Expense Report Templates page, select an applicable template for a business unit or click the Create icon.
3. On the Create Expense Report Template page, create a template for Car Rental expenses.
4. On the Expense Types tab, click the Create icon.
5. In the Create Expense Type dialog box, select **Car Rental** from the Category choice list.
6. On the Policies tab in the Create Expense Type dialog box, select the Car Rental policy you created, specify the start date, and optionally specify an end date.

## Set Up a Miscellaneous Expense Policy

Your company can set up and enforce miscellaneous expense policies to help control, manage, and reduce spending for miscellaneous expenses. Examples of miscellaneous expense policies include policies for laundry, internet cable, and parking.

This topic covers the following aspects of setting up a miscellaneous expense policy:


- Setting Up a Miscellaneous Expense Policy
- Setting Up Policy Violations
- Completing the Miscellaneous Rate Spreadsheet
- Associating the Miscellaneous Expense Policy with an Expense Type



## Setting Up a Miscellaneous Expense Policy

The following procedure enables you to set up a miscellaneous expense policy and complete the miscellaneous rate spreadsheet for uploading to the application.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
2. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select **Miscellaneous** from the Create Policy choice list.
3. On the Create Miscellaneous Expense Policy page in the Miscellaneous Eligibility Rule section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Minimum number of days for miscellaneous expense reimbursement** check box.
  - b. Days = **5**.
4. In the Rate Type section, select the **Rate limit** radio button.
5. In the Rate Definition section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Single instance limit** check box.
  - b. Select the **Single currency** radio button.
  - c. Currency = **USD US Dollar**.

 **Note:** If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.
6. In the Rate Determinants section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Role** check box.
  - b. Role Type = **Job**.
7. In the Policy Enforcements section, do the following:
  - a. Select the **Policy violation warning** check box.
  - b. Warning Tolerance Percentage = **10**.
  - c. Select the **Display warning to user** check box.
  - d. Select the **Prevent report submission** check box.
  - e. Error Tolerance Percentage = **20**.

The preceding miscellaneous expense policy says the following: You must accrue five days of miscellaneous expenses before the miscellaneous expense is eligible for reimbursement. This part of the policy is typically used when a company wants to enforce a laundry policy where the employee can only be reimbursed for laundry expenses if the trip is greater than a specified number of days. The preceding miscellaneous expense policy is set up with a single instance rate in US dollars, by job, and is enforced by a warning and an error.

## Setting Up Policy Violations


You can set up policy violations for a miscellaneous expense policy as shown in the following table.

Policy Violation	Application's Action	Effect	Calculation
Warning	Generates a warning policy violation when a miscellaneous expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	<p>You see a warning if you selected the <b>Display warning to user</b> check box.</p> <p>A warning is always displayed to the approver, whether or not you select the <b>Display warning to user</b> check box.</p>	Policy Rate * (1+Warning Tolerance/ 100)
Error	Generates an error policy violation when a miscellaneous expense exceeds the defined tolerance.	You see an error and you are prevented from submitting the miscellaneous expense.	Policy Rate * (1+Error Tolerance/ 100)

## Completing the Miscellaneous Rate Spreadsheet

To complete a miscellaneous rate spreadsheet, perform the following steps:

1. On the Create Miscellaneous Policy page, click the **Create Rates** button.
2. Download the predefined spreadsheet to your local drive for completion.

 **Note:** If you select rate determinants in the Rate Determinants section, you complete the predefined spreadsheet. If you don't select any rate determinants, you create miscellaneous rates in the **Create Rates** dialog box.

3. On the Create Miscellaneous Rates spreadsheet, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Role	Single Instance Limit (USD)	Start Date
ACC500. Accounting Manager	155	1/1/2014
SAL600. Salesperson	150	1/1/2014
SAL700.Sales Manager	160	1/1/2014
All Others	150	1/1/2014

4. Click the **Upload** button.

When rates are successfully uploaded, the policy status is valid. To use the miscellaneous rate policy for calculation of miscellaneous expenses, you must:

1. Activate the miscellaneous expense policy.
  - a. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select the miscellaneous expense policy that you created and click the **Activate** button.
2. Assign the miscellaneous expense policy to an expense type.

## Assigning the Miscellaneous Expense Policy to an Expense Type

To assign the miscellaneous expense policy to an expense type, perform the following steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Expense Report Templates task and click the **Go to Task** icon to open the Manage Expense Report Templates page.
2. Click the **Create** icon or select an applicable template for a business unit.
3. On the Create Expense Report Template page, create a template for miscellaneous expenses.
4. On the Expense Types tab, click the **Create** icon to open the Create Expense Type dialog box.
5. In the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select Miscellaneous from the Category choice list.
6. On the Policies tab in the **Create Expense Type** dialog box, select the **miscellaneous** expense policy you created, specify the start date, and optionally specify an end date.

## Capture Attendee Information for Expense Categories

Several industries have enacted gift and entertainment regulations to provide transparency and to curtail the amount spent on individuals to prevent gift recipients from influencing business decisions. To comply with local and industry-specific regulations, you can easily capture attendee information for any expense category.

First, you create an Entertainment policy with only the capture of attendee information specified. Therefore, the policy will not validate policy rates. Then, you assign this policy to any expense category except entertainment. When the worker creates an expense report and enters an expense item that is associated with the Entertainment policy, the application enforces the entry of attendee and gift recipient details. The attendee details that the worker is required to provide when creating expense items for an expense report is based on the selections you specified for the capture of attendee information during the Entertainment policy setup.

To capture attendee information, you must:

- Set up an Entertainment policy with only the capture of attendee information specified.
- Assign the Entertainment policy to an expense type.

## Set Up an Entertainment Policy

To set up an Entertainment policy, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category
2. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, click **Create Policy**, and select **Entertainment** to create a policy.
3. In the Rate Definition section on the Create Entertainment Policy page, deselect the **Enable rate limit** option.
4. In the Capture Attendee Information section, select the applicable information.
5. Click **Save and Close**.
6. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, select the newly created Entertainment policy and click **Activate** to make it available for use.
7. Click **Done**.

## Assign an Entertainment Policy to an Expense Type

To assign an Entertainment policy to an expense type, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Expense Report Templates
2. On the Manage Expense Report Templates page, select an expense template, and click the **Edit** icon.
3. On the Edit Expense Report Template page, select the expense type to associate with the Entertainment policy.
4. Click the **Edit** icon.
5. On the Edit Expense Type page, select the Policies tab.
6. In the Attendees Policy section, click the **Add Row** icon.
7. From the Policy Name choice list, select the Entertainment policy that you created, and enter the start date.
8. Click **Save and Close**.

## How You Set Up a Mileage Expense Policy

You can set up a mileage expense policy to allow employees to claim mileage reimbursement for travel expenses incurred by using their personal vehicles for business activities. In most countries, mileage reimbursement rates are determined by the central government.

Based on government mileage regulations and your company policy, you can set up a mileage expense policy by defining:

- Mileage eligibility rules
- Mileage rate determinants
- Mileage add-on rates

Mileage reimbursement is automatically calculated by the application based on your definition of the eligibility rules, rates determinants, and add-on rates.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Task: Manage Policies by Expense Category

On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, click the Create Policy choice list and select **Mileage**. The create Mileage Policy page appears.

 **Note:** If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

## Mileage Eligibility Rules

In the Mileage Eligibility Rules section, you specify the rules that determine whether employees can claim mileage reimbursement for using their personal or company provided vehicles. The following table lists the mileage eligibility rules and their descriptions.

Mileage Eligibility Rule	Description
Standard Mileage Deduction	A specified number of miles is deducted from the total miles traveled before the mileage rate calculation is applied.
Minimum Distance for Mileage Eligibility	A minimum distance must be traveled before the mileage rate calculation is applied.
Commute Mileage Deduction	Commute distance between home and office if you're required to deduct it from the trip distance.

## Mileage Rate Determinants

In the Mileage Rate Determinants section, you specify the determinants on which the mileage reimbursement policy is based. The following table lists selected mileage rate determinants and their descriptions.

Mileage Rate Determinants	Description
Role	Mileage rates are based on employees' grades, positions, or jobs.
Distance Threshold	Mileage rates are based on the distance traveled in a single trip or during a period of time.
Vehicle Category	Mileage rates are based on vehicle category, such as Company or Private.
Vehicle Type	Mileage rates are based on vehicle type, such as Car, Motorcycle, or Van.
Fuel Type	Mileage rates are based on fuel type, such as Diesel, Petrol, Hybrid, or Electric.

## Mileage Add-On Rates

In the Add-On Rates section, your company can add passenger rates and company-specific rates for inclusion in the mileage reimbursement policy. The following table lists additional rate types and their descriptions.

Add-On Rates	Description
Single rate per passenger	One mileage reimbursement rate that applies to each passenger, regardless of the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Rates by mileage determinants	Mileage rate reimbursed per passenger varies by multiple mileage rate determinants that you defined, such as Vehicle Category, Vehicle Type, or Role.

Add-On Rates	Description
Rates by range of passengers	Mileage rate reimbursed per passenger varies by the number of passengers in the vehicle. For example, the mileage reimbursement rate is .25 USD per mile for the first three passengers and .20 USD per mile thereafter.
Rate by mileage determinants and range of passengers	Mileage rate reimbursed per passenger varies by multiple mileage rate determinants that you defined and by the number of passengers in the vehicle. For example, the mileage reimbursement rate is .10 USD for the first two passengers traveling in a diesel car and .07 USD for the remaining passengers. Similarly, .08 USD for the first two passengers traveling in a hybrid car and .05 USD for the remaining passengers.
Restrict number of passengers reimbursed	Indicates whether the number of passengers included for reimbursement is limited to a specific number.
Company-Specific Rates	Company-specific mileage rate types that you can add to the mileage reimbursement calculation, such as .30 USD for hauling a trailer and .50 USD for driving on forest roads.

Once you finish setting up the mileage expense policy, you must:

- Complete the mileage rate spreadsheet and load the spreadsheet to the application, or complete the **Create Rates** dialog box, depending on the complexity of the policy.
- Activate the mileage reimbursement policy.
- Set up cumulative mileage determinants when applicable.
- Assign the mileage reimbursement policy to expense types.

## Example of Completing a Mileage Rate Spreadsheet

This example demonstrates how to set up a mileage policy given government mileage regulations and how to complete the mileage rate spreadsheet for uploading to the application.

The following table summarizes key decisions to consider before setting up a mileage policy.

Decisions to Consider	In This Example
What country does the mileage reimbursement policy apply to?	In Finland, mileage is reimbursed if the employee uses his personal vehicle for business purposes.
What is the general reimbursement policy for this country?	
What vehicle types are included in this country's mileage policy?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For a car, 45 cents per kilometer for the first 5,000 kilometers and 40 cents per kilometer for additional kilometers.</li> <li>• For a motorcycle, 34 cents for the first 5,000 kilometers and 30 cents per kilometer for additional kilometers.</li> <li>• For a motorboat, 78 cents per kilometer for engine power less than 50 hp and \$1.14 cents per kilometer for engine power more than 50 hp.</li> <li>• For a snowmobile, \$1.08 cents per kilometer.</li> </ul>
What is the unit of measure?	Kilometers

Decisions to Consider	In This Example
<p>Will the mileage policy rates be defined for a single currency or for multiple currencies?</p> <p>If a currency rate conversion is necessary to verify a policy rate limit, you must define a conversion rate in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.</p>	<p>Single currency = Euro</p>
<p>What determinants are the mileage rates based on?</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Distance threshold = By period. Selecting <b>By period</b> implies that the mileage calculation is based on cumulative mileage.</li> <li>Vehicle type = Vehicle Type</li> <li>Fuel Type = Fuel Type</li> </ul>
<p>Have you defined the mileage determinant values?</p>	<p>Define lookup types and lookup codes for vehicle types and fuel types.</p>
<p>What passenger rates or passenger information will be included in the mileage policy, if any?</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Single rate per passenger.</li> <li>3 cents per person when the employee transports other persons, where arranging such transportation is the duty of the employer.</li> </ul>
<p>What company-specific rates need to be added to the mileage policy, if any?</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7 cents when the job or duty requires transporting a trailer attached to the car.</li> <li>11 cents when the work or duty requires transporting a caravan attached to the car.</li> <li>21 cents when the work or duty requires transporting a resting hut, or similar facility, attached to the car.</li> <li>3 cents when the employee transports machines or appliances weighing more than 80 kilos, or unusually big machines or appliances, or must take a dog in the car to perform his duty or work.</li> <li>9 cents for driving a car on forest roads or on closed building sites because the employee's duty or work requires such driving.</li> </ul>
<p>What are the add-on rate types? Have you defined the add-on rate types?</p>	<p>Define a lookup type and lookup codes for the add-on rate types.</p>

## Prerequisites

1. Define the mileage determinant values that you want to use.
  - o In this example, you need to define values for the two determinants that you have chosen; Vehicle Type and Fuel Type.
  - o Create a new lookup type and add the applicable values as lookup codes.
2. Define the company-specific additional rate types that you want to use.

In this example, you need to define the following rate types: Trailer attached to the car, Transporting a caravan, Transporting a resting hut, Transporting heavy machinery, Dog in the car, and On forest road.


## Setting Up a Mileage Policy

1. On the Manage Policies by Expense Category page, click the Create Policy choice list and select **Mileage** to open the Create Mileage Policy page.
2. On the Create Mileage Policy page, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Field	Value
<b>Country</b>	Finland
<b>Rate Currency</b>	Single Currency = EUR Euro
<b>Unit of Measure</b>	Kilometer
<b>Distance Threshold Period</b>	By period
<b>Vehicle Type</b>	Lookup type that defines the applicable vehicle types.
<b>Fuel Type</b>	Lookup type that defines the applicable fuel types.
<b>Passenger Rate Type</b>	Single rate per passenger.
<b>Company-Specific Rate Type</b>	Lookup type that defines the additional rate types.

## Completing the Mileage Rate Spreadsheet

1. On the Create Mileage Policy page, click the **Create Rate** button.

 **Note:** In this example, you download a predefined spreadsheet to your local drive for completion because you selected mileage rate determinants and add-on rates on the Create Mileage Policy page. If, however, you create a mileage policy for a single currency with no mileage rate determinants or add-on rates, you create the mileage rate in a dialog box, rather than in a spreadsheet.

2. On the Create Mileage Rates spreadsheet in the Mileage Rates region, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Distance Threshold	Vehicle Type	Fuel Type	Rate	Start Date	End Date
5000	Car	All Other	0.45	1/1/2010	
	Car	All Other	0.4	1/1/2010	
5000	Motorcycle	All Other	0.34	1/1/2010	



Distance Threshold	Vehicle Type	Fuel Type	Rate	Start Date	End Date
	Motorcycle	All Other	0.3	1/1/2010	
	Motorboat	< 50 hp	0.78	1/1/2010	
	Motorboat	=> 50 hp	1.14	1/1/2010	
	Snowmobile	All Other	1.08	1/1/2010	

3. On the Create Mileage Rates spreadsheet in the Passenger Rates region, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Calculation Method	Rate	Start Date	End Date
Amount	0.03	1/1/2010	

4. On the Create Mileage Rates spreadsheet in the Additional Rates region, complete the fields as shown in the following table.

Distance Threshold	Vehicle Type	Fuel Type	Calculation Method	Rate Type	Rate	Start Date	End Date
	Car	All Other	Amount	Trailer attached to the car	0.07	1/1/2010	
	Car	All Other	Amount	Transporting a caravan	0.11	1/1/2010	
	Car	All Other	Amount	Transporting a resting hut	0.21	1/1/2010	
	Car	All Other	Amount	Transporting heavy machinery	0.03	1/1/2010	
	Car	All Other	Amount	Dog in the car	0.3	1/1/2010	
	Car	All Other	Amount	Driving on a forest road	0.09	1/1/2010	

5. On the Create Mileage Rates spreadsheet, click the **Upload** button.

The policy status becomes valid when rates are successfully uploaded. To use this rate policy for mileage calculation, you must activate the policy and assign it to an expense type.

## How You Upload Cumulative Mileage from a Third Party

You can upload accumulated mileage-to-date from a legacy system into Oracle Expenses Cloud for a midyear changeover. Uploading accumulated mileage includes the following actions:

- Performing prerequisites
- Creating a cumulative mileage data file
- Uploading a cumulative mileage data file
- Viewing uploaded cumulative mileage

If both of the following statements are true, you upload cumulative mileage for your employees to Expenses:

- Your mileage rates vary by the total distance traveled during a time period
- You will go live with the application during the current tax year.

### Performing Prerequisites

Before you can upload accumulated mileage, you must:

- Define the cumulative mileage determinants in Setup and Maintenance.
- Optionally, create vehicle type, vehicle category, and fuel type lookup codes in Setup and Maintenance.

### Creating a Cumulative Mileage Data File

The Upload Cumulative Mileage process accepts cumulative mileage in a text file format as shown in the following table.

**⚠ Caution:** To avoid data corruption, you can only run the Upload Cumulative Mileage process once per business unit, unless you are editing existing entries before employees submit additional mileage expenses.

Field	Type	Description
Person Number.	Char (30)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Required</li><li>• Must match the person number in the application.</li></ul>
Accumulated Mileage	Number (12)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Required</li><li>• Last two digits are decimal places.</li></ul>
Cumulative as of Date	MMDDYYYY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional.</li><li>• If empty, it's assumed to be the upload date.</li></ul>
Vehicle Category Lookup Code	Char (30)	Required if cumulative mileage determinant is by vehicle category.
Vehicle Type Lookup Code	Char (30)	Required if cumulative mileage determinant is by vehicle type.

Field	Type	Description
Fuel Type Lookup Code	Char (30)	Required if cumulative mileage determinant is by fuel type.
Reimbursement Amount	Number(12)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional.</li><li>• Last two digits are decimal places.</li></ul>
Reimbursement Currency	Char(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Required if reimbursement amount is present.</li><li>• Three-digit currency.</li></ul>

The following table illustrates sample file entries that you can enter in a text editor to upload cumulative mileage from a third party. The sample file entries include person number fields with their associated accumulated mileage as of a certain date, along with the vehicle type.

Person Number	Mileage Number	Vehicle
10026335772	513800000008012014	Car
10026335790	00100210020008022014	Car
10026335778	513800000008012014	Car
10026335796	00100210020008022014	Car

## Uploading a Cumulative Mileage Data File

On the Manage Cumulative Mileage Determinants page, select a cumulative mileage determinant. From the Actions menu, select **Upload**. Navigate to: Setup and Maintenance > Search: Manage Cumulative Mileage Determinants.

## Viewing Uploaded Cumulative Mileage

After you upload the cumulative mileage, employees can view their mileage in the application by activating the Expense Items infotile in the Travel and Expenses work area. Then, they select the View Cumulative Mileage option from the Actions menu. The resulting Cumulative Mileage dialog box allows employees to view cumulative mileage by time period if the mileage rate is based on a distance threshold. For example, in the UK, employees are reimbursed 45 pounds for the first 10,000 miles traveled in a car or van and 25 pounds over 10,000 miles.

## Integrate with Google Maps for Trip Distance Calculation

Google Maps is a web mapping service developed by Google. Your company can opt to integrate with Google Maps so employees can automatically and accurately calculate their mileage trip distance. The trip distance is then used to calculate employees' mileage reimbursement when submitting expense reports.

This is how it works. Google Maps uses starting locations, midway points, and destination locations to calculate trip distances. Your company's mileage reimbursement policy may deduct the commute distance between home and office from the total trip distance. If this is the case, the following calculation applies:

$$\text{Trip Distance} = \text{Total Distance} - \text{Commute Distance}$$

## Mandatory Setups to Integrate with Google Maps

To integrate with Google Maps, you must:

- Obtain a Google Map key from Google.
- Enable the Google Maps for Mileage Expenses feature.
  - a. In the Offerings work area, select the Financials offering.
  - b. Click the **Change Feature Opt In** link.
  - c. On the Opt In: Financials page, select **Expenses**.
  - d. Click the **Features** icon.
  - e. On the Edit Features: Expenses page, select the **Enable** check box for the Enable Google Maps for Mileage Expenses feature.
- Set up a Google Map key.
  - a. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, select:
    - Offering: Financials
    - Functional Area: Expenses
    - Task: Manage Expenses System Options
  - b. On the Manage Expenses System Options page, All Business Units section or the Specific Business Units section, User Options for Expense Report subsection, in the **Google Map Key** field, enter the Google Map key, which is an alphanumeric code that communicates with Google Maps.
- Enable single page expense entry.
  - a. Complete steps 1 to 4 for enabling the Google Maps for Mileage Expenses feature.
  - b. On the Edit Features: Expenses page, select the **Enable** check box for the Usability Enhancements for Expenses feature.
  - c. Select the **Single Page Expense Entry** check box.
- Create a mileage policy, optionally include a commute deduction rule, and then assign the mileage policy to an expense type to activate the policy.

## Optional Setups to Integrate with Google Maps

To integrate with Google Maps, you can opt to complete these setups:

- Enable commute mileage deduction.

If enabled on the Create Mileage Policy page, you can opt to set up the commute mileage deduction as optional or required. If enabled, the application captures the commute distance between home and office and incorporates it in the trip distance and reimbursement calculation. If you don't set up employees' home addresses in Human Capital Management, employees can enter their home addresses directly in the Calculate Mileage dialog box when calculating trip distance.

- Set up preferred locations.

You can optionally set up preferred locations by creating lookup codes for the lookup type `ORA_EXM_MILEAGE_LOCATIONS`. Preferred locations are frequent starting locations or travel destinations that your company defines. You can set up lookup codes to represent preferred locations that you can select when you want Google Maps to calculate a trip distance. A lookup code meaning represents a location that you can select and a lookup code description is the address of the preferred location.

- a. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, select:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Expense Report Auditing Lookup Types
- b. On the Manage Expense Report Auditing Lookup Types page, search and select the lookup type **ORA\_EXM\_MILEAGE\_LOCATIONS**.


## How You Set Up Expense Report Auditing

You can examine, verify, and adjust the contents of expense reports as needed. Auditing expense reports ensures that employees comply with your company's policies without having to audit all submissions. You can automate several processes related to expense report auditing.

To set up expense report auditing, you can perform the following first four steps in any order:

1. Create audit selection rules.
2. Create audit list rules.
3. Create expense template and type rules.
4. Create receipt and notification rules.
5. Assign audit rules to business units.

For the last step, you assign the audit rules created in steps 1 to 4 to business units.

 **Note:** To set up expense report auditing, you must create at least one audit selection rule, audit list rule, or expense template and type rule and then assign it to a business unit. Otherwise, Expenses can't audit expense reports.

## Create Audit Selection Rules

To enable automatic selection of expense reports for audit, select audit selection rules on the Create Audit Selection Rule page. Audit selection rules are criteria that Expenses uses to automatically select expense reports for audit.

When you set up audit selection rules, you can optionally specify audit types. Audit types are alphanumeric codes that you create which print on the cover sheet of each expense report. These codes identify the type of audit to be performed by the auditor.

Expenses divides expense reports into the following audit categories:

- Automatic Approval
- Original Receipts Audit
- Imaged Receipts Audit
- No Receipts Required Audit

For example, your alphanumeric code can read: Autoapproval, Paper Receipts Audit, Paperless Audit, or No Receipts Required. Alternatively, you can create codes known only to your Expense Audit department. Audit types provide your audit department with a convenient method for sorting paper receipt packages.

## Create Audit List Rules

To enable automatic selection of individuals for the audit list, you can:


- Select audit list rules on the Create Audit List Rule page.
- Specify the number of days a violator remains on the audit list.

Audit list rules are criteria that Expenses uses to automatically place violators on the Manage Audit List Membership page.

When an employee submits an expense report, Expenses determines whether the employee has violated an audit list rule. If he has, he is automatically added to the Manage Audit List Membership page with an end date that matches the value you entered for the **Number of Days an Individual Remains on the Audit List**. When the end date is before the current date, the violator becomes inactive. The violator's name, however, remains on the Manage Audit List Membership page for historical purposes.

If you select the criterion **Maximum Number of Days to Wait for Original Receipt Package** on the Create Audit List Rule page and you enter a value for the maximum number of days to wait, you must also enter a value in the **Original Receipt Package Received Date** field for all expense reports on the Audit Expense Report page. After you save and assign the audit list rule to a business unit, Expenses automatically places employees on the Manage Audit List Membership page who have:

- Pending receipts greater than the maximum number of days to wait
- Submitted receipts that were received after the maximum number of days to wait

 **Note:** An employee membership is considered active when the current date is between the start date and the end date or no end date exists. If an active employee on the Manage Audit List Membership page violates another audit list rule, Expenses adds the new violation and restarts the count for the number of days to remain on the audit list.

## Create Expense Template and Type Rules

To enable selection of expense reports for audit based on expense template and type, set up expense template and type rules on the Create Expense Template and Type Rule page. These rules can apply to an expense template only or to an expense type within an expense template. When an employee submits an expense report, Expenses determines whether it meets the criteria for expense template and type rules. If it does meet the criteria, the report is automatically selected for audit.

For example, the following table shows Entertainment expense type values associated with the Travel expense template. Together, they form the Travel and Entertainment rule.

Expense Template	Expense Type	Expense Type Amount	Expense Type Cumulative Amount	Expense Type Currency	Expense Type Period
Travel	Entertainment	250.00	250.00	USD	Month

The preceding granular Travel (template) and Entertainment (expense type) rule is interpreted as follows: If the employee spends more than \$250 US dollars in a month on Entertainment using the Travel expense template, then the employee's expense report is selected for audit.

You can also create broader rules that are based solely on a specific expense template without an associated expense type. For example, suppose you want to create a rule for the Training template, then all expense reports that use the Training template are selected for audit.

## Create Receipt and Notification Rules

To enable receipt and notification rules, set them up on the Create Receipt and Notification Rule page.

Create receipt and notification rules to specify:

- Type of expense report receipts required: original, imaged, or both
- Stage at which imaged receipts must be attached to the expense report
- When missing and overdue receipts are overdue
- When expense report payment holds occur
- Action Expenses takes if an employee doesn't respond to notifications for missing and overdue receipts

When an employee submits an expense report, Expenses determines whether receipts are required and acts according to the receipt and notification rules you specified. Receipt and notification rules are applied at various points throughout the expense report process. Some receipt and notification rules are applied during expense entry, some are applied during the Overdue Tracking process, and others are applied during the Process Expense Reimbursement process.


## Assign Audit Rules to Business Units

The final audit setup step is to assign the following audit rules to business units on the Manage Expense Report Audit and Receipt Rule Assignments page:

- Audit selection rules
- Expense template and type selection rules
- Audit list rules
- Receipt and notification rules

You can assign all or any audit rules to all business units in the All Business Units section. In the Specific Business Units section, you can assign specific audit rules to specific business units.

The rules that you assign to a business unit remain active during the effective period that you specify. If you don't enter an end date, the rules remain active indefinitely. To change the behavior of an audit rule, you must apply an end date to the existing rule and then create and assign a new one. If you don't assign an audit rule to a business unit, Expenses doesn't apply the audit rule to any business unit.

 **Note:** If you assign an audit list rule to a business unit, you must ensure that you also assign an audit selection rule to the same business unit that has the criterion, **Audit expense reports of individuals on the audit list**, activated. This allows Expenses to automatically add employees to the audit list and monitor the number of days they remain on the list. If you don't assign an audit list rule to a business unit, but you do assign an audit selection rule that uses the criterion, **Audit expense reports of individuals on the audit list**, you can still add employees to the audit list manually.

## Audit Selection Rules


Audit selection rules are criteria that you select on the Create Audit Selection Rule page. These rules determine which expense reports are automatically selected for audit if the audit selection rule is true. If you don't select any audit selection rules, Oracle Fusion Expenses automatically approves all expense reports.

Expenses includes the following audit selection rules:

- Audit the specified percentage of all expense reports.
- Audit expense reports greater than a specified amount.
- Audit expense reports with required receipts.
- Audit expense reports with missing imaged receipts.
- Audit expense reports with policy violations.
- Audit expense reports of individuals on the audit list.
- Audit expense reports with expenses older than a specified number of days.

### Audit the Specified Percentage of All Expense Reports


Expenses randomly selects for audit the percentage of expense reports that you specify in the **Audit Percentage** field in the Random Selection section. Reports that aren't selected for audit due to an explicit audit selection rule are candidates for random audit selection.

 **Tip:** To audit all expense reports, enter 100 in the **Audit Percentage** field.

### Audit Expense Reports Greater than a Specified Amount

Expenses selects for audit all expense reports where the total report amount is greater than the amount you specify for the audit selection rule. For this audit selection rule, you specify the amount and the ledger currency to use.

For any expense report where the ledger currency you specified is not the same as the reimbursement currency, Expenses converts the report currency to the ledger currency and calculates the expense report amount. Expenses uses the conversion rate in the General Ledger Daily Rates table that was in effect on the expense report submission date. If the calculated expense report amount is greater than the amount you specified for the audit selection rule, the report is selected for audit.

 **Note:** If no conversion rate is defined in the General Ledger Daily Rates table for the expense report ledger currency on the expense report submission date, Expenses ignores this audit selection rule and the report is not selected for audit.

### Audit Expense Reports with Required Receipts

Expenses selects for audit all expense reports with at least one expense line that requires a receipt. This audit selection rule doesn't consider whether the employee actually provided the receipts.



## Audit Expense Reports with Missing Imaged Receipts

Expenses selects for audit all expense reports for which an imaged receipt is missing.

## Audit Expense Reports with Policy Violations


Expenses selects for audit all expense reports with at least one expense line that has a policy violation.

## Audit Expense Reports of Individuals on the Audit List

Expense reports of employees who are listed on the Manage Audit List Membership page are automatically audited if their status is active as evidenced by no end date or the current date is before the end date.

To ensure automatic auditing of employees' expense reports listed on the Manage Audit List Membership page, you must:

1. Assign this audit selection rule to the applicable business unit on the Rule Assignments page.
2. Select an applicable audit list rule and assign it to the same business unit you specified in step 1.

 **Note:** If you don't assign the audit list rule you selected in step 2 to the business unit specified in step 1, you can only add individuals to the Manage Audit List Membership page manually.

## Audit Expense Reports with Expenses Older than a Specified Number of Days

Expenses reviews the receipt date of all expenses submitted with an expense report. If at least one receipt date is older than the expense report submission date by the specified number of days, the report is selected for audit. For example, if the expense report submission date is October 15 and the maximum age of expenses in the report is 7 days, the report is selected for audit if it contains expense items earlier than October 8. The audit selection rule calculation is submission date minus maximum age of expenses.

## How You Add to or Remove Employees from the Audit List

The audit list on the Manage Audit List Membership page is the list of employees whose expense reports are automatically selected for audit if an audit list rule is violated. You can also manually add employees to the audit list. The audit list is not maintained by each business unit. Instead, one audit list is available across all business units.

With Oracle Fusion Expenses, you can:

- Automatically add and remove employees from the audit list.
- Manually add or remove employees from the audit list.
- Manually add or remove employees from the audit list during auditing.

## Automatically Add and Remove Employees from the Audit List

During setup on the Create Audit List Rule page, you can select any of the following audit list rules:

- Maximum number of days to wait for original receipt package
- Allowable total monthly amount of all expense reports

- Allowable number of policy violations per month
- Allowable number of expense reports per month


Expenses automatically adds employees to the audit list if they violate any audit list rules you select.

You can automatically add employees to the audit list by performing all of the following actions:

- On the Create Audit List Rule page, select audit list criteria to create an audit list rule.

Expenses uses audit list rules to automatically place employees on the audit list if they violate the audit list rules that you select.

- For each audit list criterion that you select, specify the number of days that the application automatically monitors the expense reports of the active employees on the audit list.

 **Note:** If another audit list violation occurs for an employee during the time period he remains on the audit list, the application resets the count for the same number of days to remain on the list.


- On the Create Expense Report Audit Selection Rule page, select the **Audit expense report of individuals on the audit list** rule in the Additional Rules section.

Audit selection rules are the criteria that Expenses uses to automatically select expense reports for audit.

- On the Rule Assignments page, associate the audit list rule and the audit selection rule with a business unit.

You can automatically remove employees from the audit list by performing the following action:

- On the Create Audit List Rule page, enter a value for the number of days that the application automatically monitors the expense reports of employees on the audit list. When the number of monitoring days is complete, the employee is no longer automatically monitored by the application and he is inactivated on the Manage Audit List Membership page.

 **Note:** For both automatic and manual additions or deletions from the audit list, you can add reasons to the Audit List Addition Reason choice list by configuring the lookup EXM\_AUDIT\_REASON.

## Manually Add or Remove Employees from the Audit List

On the Manage Audit List Membership page, you can select any of the following predefined reasons from the **Audit List Addition Reason** choice list to manually add employees to the audit list:

- Expenses amounts near threshold
- High frequency of same expense types
- Disproportionate number of cash expenses
- Violates an undefined policy

You can manually remove employees from the audit list on the Manage Audit List Membership page by:

- Specifying an end date. If no end date is specified, an employee remains on the audit list indefinitely.
- Selecting a reason from the **Audit List Addition Reason** choice list:

## Manually Add or Remove Employees from the Audit List During Auditing

While auditing an expense report on the Audit Expense Report page, you can manually add employees to the audit list by:

- Selecting the **Add to audit list** check box if visible.
- Selecting a reason from the **Reason** choice list:

While auditing an expense report on the Audit Expense Report page, you can manually remove employees from the audit list by:

- Selecting the **Remove from audit list** check box if visible.
- Selecting a reason from the **Reason** choice list:

## Options for Setting Up Receipt Management Rules

Receipt management ensures that all required expense report receipts are submitted by employees. To do this, you can create receipt and notification rules to determine:

- When to send notifications to employees
- When to place payment holds on expense reports due to missing or overdue receipts

You can assign receipt and notification rules to each business unit in your company to reflect your business policies. When you set up receipt and notification rules according to your company's policies, employees aren't reimbursed for expenditures until missing or overdue original or imaged receipts are submitted.

When you set up receipt management rules for your company, you can specify the following:


- Type of receipts
- Granularity of receipt requirements
- Receipt requirements

### Type of Receipts

The first and most important receipt management decision is to specify the type of receipt your company requires for expense report submission. You can require:

- Original receipts
- Imaged receipts
- Original and imaged receipts


You can specify your company's receipt requirement in the header of the Create Receipt and Notification Rule page. Original receipts are paper receipts that employees receive after incurring an expense. Imaged receipts are expense receipts that have been converted to a digital image by a camera, scanner, or fax so they can be attached to the online expense report.

 **Note:** If you specify that imaged receipts are required, you must also specify the point in the expense report process at which their attachment to the expense report is required.

## Granularity of Receipt Requirements

The second receipt management decision is to specify the level on which you want to define receipt rules. You can specify receipt rules at all, any, or none of the following levels:

- Organization level: Create Receipt and Notification Rule page

 **Note:** If you don't select a required type of receipt on the Create Receipt and Notification Rule page, then Expenses selects **Originals only** as the default type of receipt required.

- Template level: Create Expense Template page, Receipt Requirement tab
- Expense type level: Edit Expense Type page, Receipt Requirement tab

The following table indicates the sequence in which Expenses processes receipt and notification rules. It starts with the lowest level and moves to the highest level.

Sequence in Which Expenses Processes Receipt and Notification Rules	Level
Lowest level	Expense type
Middle level	Template
Highest level	Organization

## Receipt Requirements

The third receipt management decision is to specify receipt requirements. You can define them on the Receipt Requirement tabs of the Create Expense Template page or the Edit Expense Type page.

You can specify receipt requirements for:

- Cash expense lines
- Corporate card expense lines
- Negative expense lines
- Disallowance of missing receipts
- Display of missing receipt warning

## Expense Report Payment Hold Rules

You can set up expense report payment hold rules for individuals and corporate card issuers in the Expense Report Payment Hold section on the Create Receipt and Notification Rule page. You can then schedule and periodically run the Process Expense Report Reimbursement process to check whether any payment hold rules are in effect.

An expense report payment hold rule is a component of the receipt and notification rule that is assigned to a specific business unit. A payment hold rule places current or future expense reports on hold when receipts aren't received or when they're

overdue. When expense report payment hold rules are implemented, reimbursement to the individual or payment to the corporate card issuer can't occur until expense report holds are released.


The Process Expense Report Reimbursement process also checks whether expense report payment holds can be released. Payment holds are released when:

- The expense auditor manually releases the payment hold on the Audit Expense Report page by selecting the **Release Hold** option on the **Actions** menu.
- Based on receipt status, Expenses detects that receipts are received, waived, or declaration received and automatically releases the payment hold.


Holding expense report payments from individuals and corporate card issuers can include the following reasons:

- Hold payment if receipts are required, but not yet received.
- Hold payment if receipts are overdue on a previously submitted expense report.

All submitted expense reports that require receipts are evaluated. When the rule is set to hold payment when receipts are overdue, payments for all subsequent reports are placed on hold if any have outstanding receipts.

 **Note:** If an expense report is placed on payment hold due to overdue or required receipts that are not yet received, neither the individual nor the corporate card issuer is reimbursed. This rule is applicable only when the payment liability for the card issuer is Both Pay and the Apply Hold Rule To option is set to **Report of both individuals and corporate card issuers**.

Your company schedules and periodically runs the Process Expense Report Reimbursement process, which checks whether any payment hold rules are in effect. If they are, Expenses places payment holds on expense reports according to the specified payment hold rules. Individuals who have expense report payments held receive a notification. When receipts are received or waived, Expenses automatically releases holds. Alternatively, the expense auditor can manually release a payment hold at his discretion.

 **Tip:** By default, payments aren't held for project-only expense reports. However, you can specify inclusion of project-only expense reports as eligible for payment holds by selecting the **Apply hold rules to expense reports** check box. Every expense line contains a project-related information check box in the Expense Report Payment Hold section on the Create Receipt and Notification Rules page.

## FAQs for Expense Policies and Rules

### Can expense types be used across expense templates?

No. You can't define an expense type in an expense template and reference that same expense type in another expense template.

You can, however, create an expense type with the same name in another expense template. Expense types are template-specific.

#### *Related Topics*

- [What's an expense template](#)

## How can I enable users to select reimbursement currencies for each expense report?

You must set the setup option, **Allow Reimbursement Currency Selection**, to **Yes** and enable multiple currencies in Oracle Fusion Payables. If you don't want to allow users to select the reimbursement currency, set this option to **No**.

By default, this setup option is set to **No**, which means that the expense report is reimbursed in your ledger currency. You can optionally set the option at the implementation level on the Manage Expenses System Options page, which applies to all business units. Alternatively, you can specify exceptions for specific business units in the Create System Options: Specific Business Unit dialog box.

## How can I enable users to select payment methods in expense reports?

You must set the system option, **Enable Payment Method**, to **Yes**. If you don't want to allow users to select the payment method for reimbursement of each expense report, set the option to **No**.

By default, this option is set to **No**. The application uses the default payment method, such as check or EFT, that was set up for the users' reimbursement. You can optionally set the option at the implementation level on the Manage Expenses System Options page, which applies to all business units. Alternatively, you can specify exceptions for specific business units in the Create System Options: Specific Business Unit dialog box.

## How can I display the barcode?

Set the system option, **Display Bar Code**, to **Yes**. The barcode is displayed on the printed copies. This system option enables you to fax receipts and the expense report cover sheet with the barcode on it to a server. The server attaches the receipts to the expense reports. You can set this system option at the implementation level on the Manage Expenses System Options page, which applies to all business units. You can also specify exceptions for specific business units in the Create System Options: Specific Business Unit dialog box.

### *Related Topics*

- [Why do I have to configure the barcode font mapping](#)

## How can I configure expense report number prefixes for different business units?

If you select alphanumeric prefixes for expense report numbers, then you must enter the **Expense Report Number Prefix** as a setup option. You can define prefixes at the implementation level on the Manage Expenses System Options page, which applies to all business units. You can also specify exceptions for specific business units or define the prefix for each business unit on the **Create System Options: Specific Business Unit** dialog box.

## How can I enable a printable expense report format and assign it to a business unit?

Your company can create printable expense report formats in BI Publisher Enterprise to meet legal or expense report formatting requirements.

You can then assign the formats to any of the business units on the Manage System Options page. To assign a printable expense report format to an existing business unit, click the applicable business unit link. On the Edit System Options page, select a value from the Printable Expense Report Format choice list. If the business unit that you want to assign a printable expense report format to doesn't exist in the Specific Business Units section, click Create. Then select a business unit from the Business Unit choice list. Now select a value from the Printable Expense Report Format choice list.

## How can I change a default expense template for a business unit?

Every business unit can have only one default expense template. If you enable an expense template as the default template, you can select another template as the default. Only templates that have corporate card mapping enabled are eligible to become the new default expense template. If the expense template is eligible, then the **Set as default** check box in the header section is enabled for selection.

To set another expense template as the default, navigate to the Manage Expense Report Templates page. Find the template you want to specify as the new default expense template and click its name. In the Edit Expense Report Template page, select the **Set as default** check box in the header region and save the template. If the template doesn't meet the criteria for a default expense template, then the **Set as default** check box is disabled. In that case, confirm that the **Enable corporate card mapping** check box is selected.

## How can I enable expense auditors to audit expense reports for specific business units?

You can enable expense auditors to audit expense reports for specific business units by assigning them specific expense auditor data roles for the business units. For example, to allow an expense auditor to audit reports for the Vision Operations business unit, assign the Expense Auditor Vision Operations data role to the auditor.

## What's a rate determinant?

A rate determinant for an entertainment expense policy is a variable that determines the policy rate amount limit for which an employee can be reimbursed for entertainment or gift expenses. An entertainment expense policy has one rate determinant, which is attendee types. Since attendee types is a rate determinant, you can define different policy rate amounts for different event attendee types, such as a public sector client or a private sector client.

## How can the administrator enable the Oracle Fusion Expenses mobile application on an iPhone or iPad?

Using the mobile device, users must download and install the Oracle Fusion Expenses mobile application from the Apple Store at **<http://www.apple.com/iphone/from-the-app-store/>**. Users require the following information to use the mobile application:

**Host URL:** If your company has a specific URL for the Oracle Fusion Financials domain, then the host URL is the URL for the Financials domain. The following URL is an example: <https://fusion-fin.mycompany.com:7002>. If your company has a single URL for the entire Oracle Fusion Applications, then the host URL is the one you use for Oracle Fusion Applications. The following URL is an example: <https://fusion.mycompany.com>. The server must use an HTTPS connection.

**User Name and Password:** User's user name and password that is used to access the Expenses web-based application.

If your company doesn't enable Oracle Fusion applications outside its firewall, users must connect to your company's network using a Virtual Private Network (VPN). The VPN is used for the initial connection and to upload expense items to Expenses web-based application. For convenience, users can enter expenses on the mobile device when they aren't connected to VPN.



# 4 Travel


## How You Set Up Prerequisites for Travel Partner Integration

A travel partner is an online booking provider or a travel agency that provides travel services to your employees. Before you can set up a travel partner and booking sites in Oracle Fusion Expenses, your company must perform the following prerequisite steps:

- Select a travel partner.
- Configure booking sites.
- Configure travel policies and policy violations.
- Determine employee access methods.
- Set up employees.

### Select a Travel Partner

Your company selects a travel partner based on the travel needs of your employees and the travel booking support provided by the travel partner in countries where your employees are located. If you choose, you can also use the services of a travel partner for specific countries only.

 **Note:** Expenses currently supports travel partner integration with GetThere. GetThere may provide your travel booking services directly or through a travel agency.

### Configure Booking Sites

A booking site is an instance of your travel partner's booking tool that is configured for a group of employees. Your company may require one or more booking sites, which are configured in the travel partner's system. Your company may require multiple booking sites depending on your operations.

- Your company operates in multiple countries or regions.
- Your company's travel policies vary based on employee job roles.

For example, employees in the management level of executive vice president and over are eligible to stay in luxury hotels, while employees in the management level of vice president and under are not eligible. Similarly, employees in the management level of executive vice president and over are eligible to fly first class, while employees in the management level of vice president and under are only eligible for business class.

- Your company wants booking sites displayed in the language of each country or region.

Your travel partner configures your booking site instances in its system and provides you with the site names that represent those instances, as well as the sign in credentials for administrative access.

## Configure Travel Policies and Policy Violations

You create travel policies in the travel partner's system to enforce your company's travel policies. For each booking site that you set up, you must configure travel policies and policy violations. When you set up your travel partner in Expenses, the travel policy violations and justifications are downloaded to Expenses with the itineraries.

## Determine Employee Access Methods

Your company must decide how your employees will access and sign in to the booking sites. Your company can enable sign in access in one of the two following ways.

- Single sign-on (SSO)
- Authentication by travel partner

If your company already has a system that centrally manages all user accounts and passwords, known as Federated authentication with an identity provider, and sign in to all systems are routed through this central system, you can use the same capability for accessing your booking sites. When you enable SSO, employee passwords are not stored in your travel partner's system. You can enable SSO for all or for specific booking sites.

**▲ Caution:** When you set up employees in booking sites with SSO enabled, it is advisable for employee user names in booking sites to match the corresponding user names in your IdP. For example, if employee user names are their email identifiers, then it's advisable for the user names in the booking sites to also be email identifiers.

An alternative way to enable sign in access is authentication by your travel partner. In this scenario, you associate your employees with booking sites in your travel partner's system, along with their user names and passwords. When employees access the booking sites, they enter their user names and passwords and the booking sites validate the sign in credentials. For this access alternative, user names do not have to match that of any other system.

## Set Up Employees

After your travel partner configures your booking site instances in its system, you can set up your employees and their sign in credentials in your travel partner's system. If your travel policies vary by job roles or other criteria, you must set up the relevant information for each employee in the travel partner's system. This information also determines your employees' access to relevant booking sites.

## Setting Up a Travel Partner and Booking Sites: Explained

A travel partner is an online booking provider or a travel agency that provides travel services to your employees. A booking site is an instance of your travel partner's booking tool that is configured for a group of employees.

Before you can set up a travel partner and booking sites, your company must perform the following prerequisite steps in the travel partner's system:

- Select a travel partner.
- Configure booking sites.
- Configure travel policies and policy violations.
- Determine employee access methods.

- Set up employees.

The following table contains mandatory and optional setups that you complete at the travel partner or booking site levels to integrate with a travel partner.

Mandatory	Setups	Level	Page
Yes	itinerary import	Travel partner	Manage Travel Partner Integration
No	itinerary validation rules	Travel partner or booking site	Manage Travel Partner Integration or Create or Edit Booking Site
Yes	booking sites	Booking site	Create or Edit Booking Site
Yes	booking site links	Booking site or travel partner	Create or Edit Booking Site or Manage Travel Partner Integration
No	booking site assignments	Booking site	Create or Edit Booking Site

## Itinerary Import

To import itineraries into Expenses from your travel partner, you must enter the following information at the travel partner level.


- Connection user name and password  
Your travel partner provides the user name and password to your company.
- Super site name  
The travel partner's system assigns a name to your company.

## Itinerary Validation Rules

Your reliance on accurate travel data to make strategic, company-wide travel decisions is essential. To improve the accuracy of travel data and to provide visibility of policy violations to approvers and auditors, you can enable validations on itineraries when they are imported into Expenses. You manage itinerary validation rules on the Manage Travel Itinerary Validation Rules page. You can optionally assign itinerary validation rules at the travel partner level or the booking site level, based on your company's global and regional business requirements. You can also override an itinerary validation rule at the booking site level.

## Booking Sites

You must create booking sites to import itineraries and to permit your employees to navigate to booking sites from the Expenses work area. Your travel partner provides you with a booking site identifier for each of your company booking sites. Site identifiers identify your booking sites to your travel partner and are required for itinerary import.

 **Note:** You must create at least one booking site for your travel partner.


## Booking Site Links

To allow employees to access travel booking sites from the Expenses work area, you can define a booking site link in the following ways:

- Default booking site URL:

All your employees use this link if they are not assigned to a specific booking site.

To select this option, enter an URL at the partner level in the Default Booking Site Link field in the Booking Sites section on the Manage Travel Partner Integration page. By default, all employees use this URL to access the travel partner unless you specify a booking site-specific URL on the Create Booking Site page.

 **Note:** An URL entered at the booking site level on the Create Booking Site page overrides the URL entered at the partner level on the Manage Travel Partner Integration page.

- Booking site-specific URLs:

Each booking site has a specific link. Even if you have a single travel partner site, you can define an exception using a site-specific link. You may have to use booking site-specific URLs when:

- Your company uses a SSO for most, but not all, of its locations. You need specific booking sites due to local or regional regulations. Your company uses a SSO for most, but not all, of its locations.
- You need specific booking sites due to local or regional regulations.

To select this option, enter an URL at the booking site level in the Site Booking Link field on the Create Booking Site page.

Whether you select the default booking site URL or the booking site-specific URLs option, you can enter any of the following access links:

- Single sign-on (SSO)
  - From the Travel tab in the Expenses work area, employees navigate to their assigned booking site after the application signs them in automatically.
- Authentication by travel partner or travel agency
  - Employees navigate to the travel partner or travel agency's authentication page where they provide their user name and password and then they are taken to their assigned booking sites.

If your company permits SSO, you enter the SSO URL from the identity provider as the booking site link. When employees click Book Travel in the Expenses work area, they are automatically signed in and they automatically navigate to their assigned booking sites.

If your company doesn't permit SSO, employee credentials are authenticated by the travel partner or the travel agency. When employees click Book Travel in the Expenses work area, they navigate to the booking site URL that you set up. However, they must enter their credentials and sign in to the booking site.

The applicable URL can be your travel partner's site URL or a travel agency's booking site URL, depending on how you access your travel sites.


## Booking Site Assignments

Assignment of employees to a booking site on the Create Booking Site page is required only if you select the booking site-specific URLs option as described in the Booking Site Links section of this topic. When you assign employees to booking sites, information you enter in Expenses and in GetThere results in automatic navigation of employees to the correct booking site when they click Book Travel on the Trips page.

In your travel partner's system, you have set up employees and the travel sites to which they have access. In the Site Assignments section on the Create Booking Site page, instead of individually assigning employees to sites, you specify the association based on two parameters, country and employment. Within employment, site assignment of employees can be set up by job role or job management level.

The following table contains examples of employee booking site assignments by country, by employment groups, and by type of employment.

Scenario	Assignment by Country	Employment Groups to Which Assignment is Applicable	Assignment by Employment Type
Booking site is accessible to all employees in the company.	All countries	All employment	Not applicable
Booking site is accessible to all employees in the US.	Specific country	All employees	Not applicable
Booking site is accessible to all senior vice presidents in the company, except in Australia.	All countries with exceptions	Specific employment	Job management level

 **Note:** Before you can select the Job role or Job management level option in the Site Assignments section on the Create Booking Site page, you must set up job roles and job management levels in Oracle Human Capital Management.

## How You Set Up Travel Integration

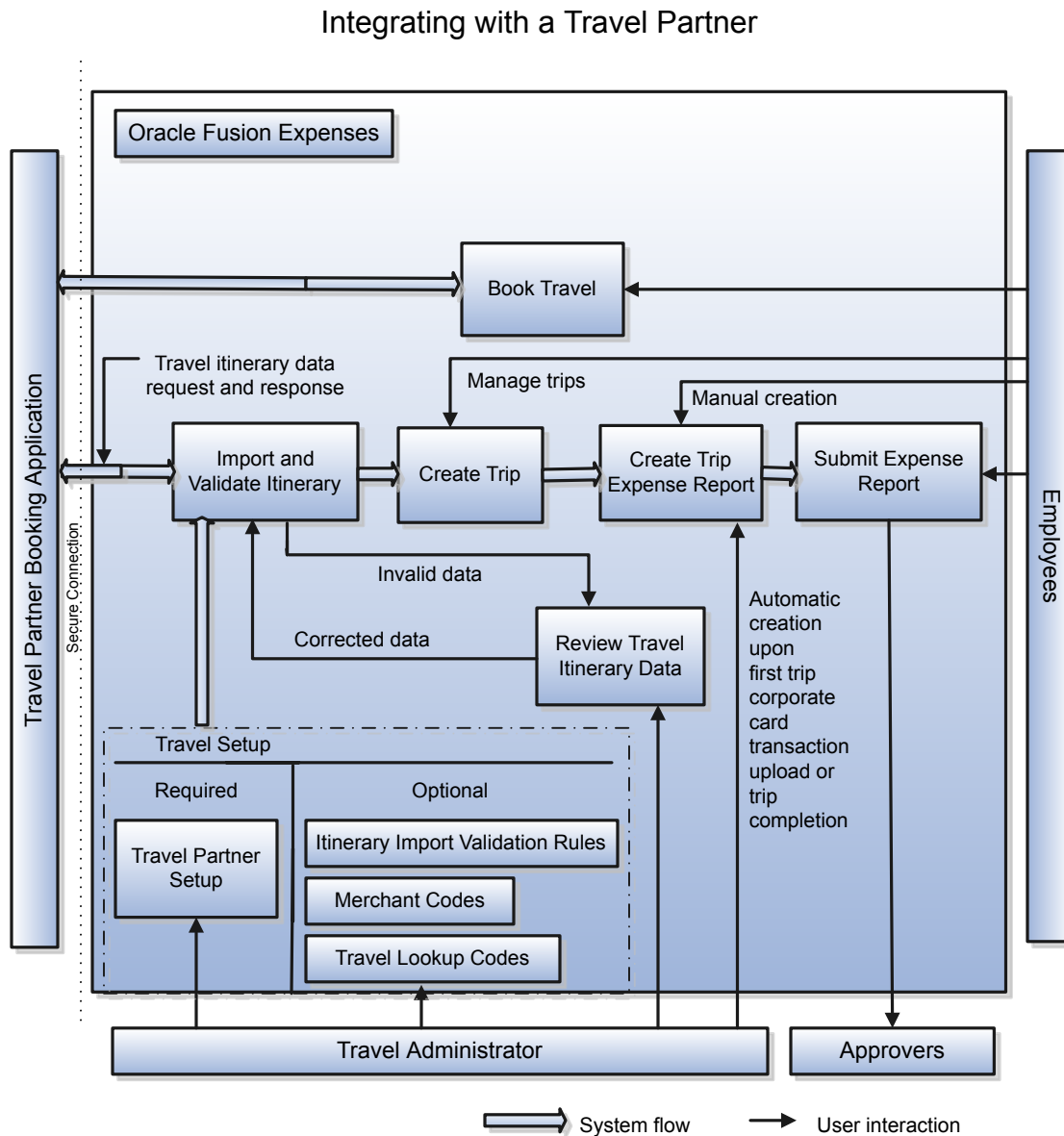
You integrate with your travel partner to improve employee travel booking experience, to provide visibility to travel actions and patterns, and to facilitate reporting on noncompliant travel. In addition, the resulting travel data enables you to make cost-effective decisions and help with travel supplier negotiations.

When you enable travel integration, the following actions can occur:

- Itinerary data is imported into Expenses from your travel partner and trips are automatically created for valid itineraries.
- Updates to itineraries are imported into Expenses from your travel partner until the employee takes the trip.
- The travel administrator corrects itineraries with validation errors.
- Employees manage their trips.
- Expense reports are automatically created and appear in the Expenses work area.

- Approvers and auditors can view the difference between booked and actual travel expenses, booking policy violations, and justifications provided by users.

The following figure illustrates how a deploying company integrates with a travel partner.



**Note:** Expenses supports integration with GetThere.

To set up travel integration in Expenses, you must perform the following required setup tasks:

- Enable Travel Integration
- Configure Travel Partner and Travel Sites

- Schedule Travel Itinerary Import Process
- Assign Travel Administrator

To improve the quality of travel data and to enhance employees' user experience, you can set up the following optional tasks:

- Define Itinerary Validation Rules
- Enable Automatic Creation of Trip-Based Expense Reports

## Enable Travel Integration

To receive itinerary data from your travel partner, you must enable travel integration. To do this, select **Yes** for the **Enable Travel** option on the Manage Expenses System Options page. You can set this option for all business units or for specific business units that are enabling travel integration.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Expenses System Options page:

- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Task: Manage Expenses System Options

## Configure Travel Partner and Travel Sites

Your travel partner and its booking sites store the following information about your company's setup:

- Connection information to your travel partner for itinerary import
- Travel sites defined by your company
- Booking site links
- Association of your employees with booking sites.


You can integrate with your travel partner and set up booking sites on the Manage Travel Partner Integration page.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Partner Integration page:

- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Task: Manage Travel Partner Integrations

## Schedule Import Travel Itineraries Process

To automatically import itineraries into Expenses at predefined intervals, you must schedule the Import Travel Itineraries process. The first run of the process imports itineraries according to the specified import process start date and time. Subsequent runs import itineraries that are created or updated since the last import. You can schedule the process to import itineraries for each booking site. The process imports itineraries in both active and ticketed statuses. A ticketed status means that the travel partner or merchant has issued a ticket to the employee for the trip. Because the process runs in near real-time, it's advisable to schedule it frequently.

 **Note:** The Import Travel Itineraries process also imports itineraries that have a status of Canceled. If itineraries were canceled before importation, they won't have any details. If itineraries are canceled after importation, their status is updated accordingly.

You can schedule the Import Travel Itineraries process from the Travel Administration work area Tasks pane by clicking the Import Travel Itineraries link. Navigation: **Travel Administration > Import Travel Itineraries > Advanced button > Schedule tab**. Alternately, you can schedule it from the Scheduled Processes work area. Navigation: **Navigator > Tools > Scheduled Processes > Schedule New Process > Job > Name: Import Travel Itineraries**.

## Assign Travel Administrator

To monitor imported itineraries and resolve itinerary data errors, you must have a travel administrator. To provide the travel administrator with access to the Travel Administration work area, you must assign him or her the job role of Travel Manager.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Users page:

- Offering: Financials
- Task: Manage Users

## Optionally, Enable Itinerary Validation Rules

Your reliance on accurate travel data to make strategic, company-wide travel decisions is essential. You can optionally enable travel itinerary validation rules to be applied when travel itineraries are imported. An itinerary validation rule identifies data errors so the travel administrator can correct them. Additionally, you can enable itinerary validation rules if you want expense report approvers and auditors to view booking policy violations and the associated justifications provided by employees.

Additional setup is required if you choose to enable the following validations for use in creating validation rules:

- Airline class of ticket
- Location
- Merchant
- Policy violation

The following table describes the validations that require additional setup, their validation types, source names, and high-level setup actions.

Validations	Validation Type	Source Name	High-Level Set Up
Airline class of ticket	Lookup	EXM_TICKET_CLASS	<div><div><div><div>1.</div><div>Add lookup codes to the EXM_TICKET_CLASS lookup type on the Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page.</div></div><div><div>2.</div><div>Alternatively, you can create a new class of ticket lookup type that starts with the prefix EXM_TRAVEL</div></div></div></div> <div><div>In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page.</div><div><div>• Offering: Financials</div></div></div>



Validations	Validation Type	Source Name	High-Level Set Up
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Task: Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types</li> </ul>
Location	Trading Community Architecture	Not applicable	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review geographies on the TCA Manage Geographies page.</li> <li>Create a missing geography hierarchy for all possible city, state, and country values for itinerary reservations.</li> </ol> <p>In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Geographies page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Offering: Financials</li> <li>Task: Manage Geographies</li> </ul>
Merchant	Table	EXM_MERCHANT	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Open the predefined Merchant Codes spreadsheet from the Manage Merchant Codes task in the Travel Administration work area.</li> <li>Ensure that all merchants for itinerary reservations appear in the spreadsheet.</li> <li>Add any needed merchants to the spreadsheet.</li> </ol>
Policy Violation	Lookup	EXM_POL_VIOLATION_TYPES	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add lookup codes to the EXM_POL_VIOLATION_TYPES lookup type on the Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page.</li> <li>Alternatively, you can create a new booking policy lookup type that starts with the prefix EXM_TRAVEL.</li> </ol> <p>In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Offering: Financials</li> <li>Task: Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types</li> </ul>

You can assign itinerary validation rules to your travel partner or to its booking sites. Creation and assignment of the validation rules occurs on the Create Travel Itinerary Validation Rules page. Navigation: **Navigator > My Information > Expenses > Travel Administration > Manage Travel Itinerary Validation Rules task > Create icon > Create Travel Itinerary**

**Validation Rules page.** Alternatively, you can access the Manage Travel Itinerary Validation Rules page from the Setup and Maintenance work area.

## Optionally, Enable Automatic Creation of Trip-Based Expense Reports

You can optionally enable automatic creation of expense reports based on trips. Automatic creation of reports simplifies and expedites expense entry for employees. To do this, you can take the following steps:

1. Select **Yes** for the **Enable Automatic Travel Expense Report Creation** option on the Manage Expenses System Options page. When travel is enabled, the default value for this option is **Yes**. You can set this option for all business units or for specific business units.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Expenses System Options page:

- o Offering: Financials
  - o Task: Manage Expenses System Options
2. Schedule the Create Trip Expense Report process to automatically create expense reports from trips. This process creates expense reports from corporate card transactions that match those transacted over the trip's duration. The timing of the expense report creation is based on each employee's preference as specified on the Expenses Preferences page. Navigation: **Navigator > Tools > Scheduled Processes > Schedule New Process > Job > Name: Create Trip Expense Report.**

When automatic creation of expense reports is enabled, employees can choose to generate expense reports upon completion of their trips or when they receive the first corporate card transaction. Employees can also choose to manually initiate creation of expense reports.

## How You Set Up Travel Itinerary Validation Rules

Your reliance on accurate travel data to make strategic, company-wide travel decisions is essential. To improve the accuracy of travel data and to provide visibility of policy violations to approvers and auditors, you can enable validations that act on itineraries when you import them.

You can setup itinerary validation rules on the Manage Travel Itinerary Validation Rules page. You can enforce them by assigning them to a travel partner or to a specific booking site.

The application executes two types of itinerary validation rules:

- Validations that always occur
- Validations that you can enable

### Validations That Always Occur

The Import Travel Itineraries process has validations that identify:

- Invalid itineraries to reject
- Itineraries with critical validation errors

Itineraries that are rejected and didn't import are displayed in the **Itinerary Import Failures** dialog box by clicking on the nonzero value of the Itinerary Import Failures count for a process shown in the Travel Itinerary Import Requests table in the Travel Administration work area. They can have any of the following errors:

- The itinerary status is Null.
- The last modified time stamp on the itinerary is null or is an invalid format.
- The itinerary has an Invalid reservation, where the reservation confirmation number is null.
- An unexpected error occurs while attempting to import the details for an itinerary.

 **Note:** Validations that always occur do not require any setup.

Trips aren't created for itineraries that failed import and you can't access their details for correction. The Import Travel Itineraries process attempts to reimport failed itineraries for the number of days past the initial failed import specified by the process parameter.

Itineraries with critical validation errors that require you to fix them before a trip can be created include those with:

- Missing or unmatched employee numbers
- Missing pricing information, such as amount and currency, for one or more reservations
- An unexpected error while validating an itinerary

You can fix itineraries with critical validation errors in the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page. Clicking the nonzero value of the Critical Validation Errors count for a process shown in the Travel Itinerary Import Requests table in the Travel Administration work area, navigates you to the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page displaying those errors.

Trips are also not created for itineraries with critical validation errors. The Import Travel Itineraries process continues to revalidate all itineraries with validation errors and create a trip for itineraries once critical validation errors are fixed.

## Validations That You Can Enable

To enhance the quality of trip data, you can enable a set of itinerary validations. The following itinerary validations require additional setup as described:

- Policy violation validations
- Merchant validation
- Location validation
- Ticket's air class validation
- Currency code and amount
- Date and time
- Flight or train number

The following table describes the validations that you can enable with their associated setup steps.

Validation

Steps to Enable Validations

Policy violation validations

The Import Travel Itineraries process validates policy violations provided by your travel partner against the policy violations specified as the source lookup assigned to the policy violation validation rules on the Manage Travel Itinerary Validation Rules page.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page.:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Task: Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types
2. Navigate as follows: **Setup and Maintenance > Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types task > Go to Task icon > Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page.**
3. Configure the lookup codes in the EXM\_POL\_VIOLATION\_TYPES lookup type to include the violations provided by your travel partner or create a new EXM lookup type and codes for booking violations.
4. Define the lookup code meaning to match the policy violation meaning provided by your travel partner.

If you receive policy violations in languages other than your base language, you must set up language-specific text for the lookup code meaning to support policy violations in different languages.

For example, your company has two booking sites, US and France. Your travel partner provides policy violations in the regional language, which is French. Both booking sites enforce a policy violation if the lowest fare isn't selected. If an employee doesn't select the lowest fare, he must justify the policy violation using the following reason: Needed a direct flight due to time constraints.

To enforce the lowest fare policy for itineraries from both sites during itinerary import, you must define the policy violation message as the meaning in English, as well as in French.

Itineraries with policy violations that don't exist in the application are tagged as an Unmatched Value validation error.

Merchant validation

1. To add missing merchant codes to merchant reference data, navigate to the Travel Administration work area.
2. Click the **Manage Merchants Codes** link.
3. Download the spreadsheet, add new merchants, and upload.

Itineraries with merchants that don't exist in the application are tagged as an Unmatched Value validation error.


Location validation

A location validation is performed against the geography data stored centrally in the Oracle Fusion Applications Trading Community Architecture.

1. To add or change a missing location to reference data, first review the values in the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page.
2. Define missing locations in Oracle Fusion Trading Community Architecture.  
In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Geographies page:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Task: Manage Geographies

Itineraries with locations that don't exist in the application are tagged as an Unmatched Value validation error.

Validation	Steps to Enable Validations
Ticket's air class validation	<p>Validation of a ticket's air class is performed against the EXM_TICKET_CLASS lookup type. You can configure the lookup type to add new classes of air tickets.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. To add a missing ticket's air class to reference data, first review the values in the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page.</li><li>2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types page.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o Offering: Financials</li><li>o Task: Manage Travel Policy Lookup Types</li></ul></li><li>3. To add a missing ticket's air class to reference data, create a new lookup code for the lookup EXM_AIR_CLASS_OF_TICKETS and define the same meaning provided by your travel partner.</li><li>4. If you use a company-defined lookup code for the ticket's air class validation, add the new code in this lookup.</li></ol> <p>Itineraries with air ticket classes that don't exist in the application are tagged as an Unmatched Value validation error.</p>
Currency code and amount	Setup isn't required. The currencies from Oracle Fusion General Ledger are used for validation.
Date and time	Setup isn't required. This is a standard date and time validation.
Flight or train number	Setup isn't required. The application validates that the flight or train number is present.

 **Note:** For itineraries that fail the validations that you can enable, the application creates trips. The travel administrator can correct the validation errors and the itineraries as needed.

## Resolving Travel Itinerary Import and Validation Issues: Explained

You run the Import Travel Itineraries process to validate and import travel itineraries from your travel partner into Oracle Fusion Expenses. When you run the process, the following results may occur:

- The Import Travel Itineraries process completes with an error.
- The Import Travel Itineraries process completes with a warning or success but doesn't import any itineraries.
- The Import Travel Itineraries process completes with a warning.

### Import Travel Itineraries Process Completes with an Error

The process completes with an error when:

- It can't establish a connection with your travel partner.
- It encounters an unexpected error.
- The travel partner's portal or booking site is unavailable.

To identify the error, review the log and output details of the Import Travel Itineraries process by performing the following steps:


1. Navigate to the Travel Administrator work area.
2. Select the applicable process.
3. From the Action menu, select **View Process Details**.
4. In the View Process Details dialog box, click the log .txt file.
5. In the View Output Parameters column, click the output file.

Verify that the travel partner integration values described in the following table are set up correctly. Navigation: **Setup and Maintenance work area > Manage Travel Partner Integrations task > Go to Task > Manage Travel Partner Integrations page**.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Partner Integrations page.


- Offering: Financials
- Task: Manage Travel Partner Integrations

Invalid Value	Log File Error	Page
Connection User Name and Password	CreateSessionWS failed with authentication error.	Manage Travel Partner Integration page
Super Site Name	CreateSessionWS failed with authentication error.	Manage Travel Partner Integration page
Create Session Web Service Definition Language (WSDL) location	CreateSessionWS failed with InaccessibleWSDLException.  An error occurs only when the travel partner asks you to change a WSDL location and you enter it incorrectly.	Manage Travel Partner Integration page
Retrieve Itinerary Locator WSDL location	RetrieveItinLocatorWS failed with InaccessibleWSDLException  An error occurs only when the travel partner asks you to change a WSDL location and you enter it incorrectly.	Manage Travel Partner Integration page
Retrieve Itinerary Details WSDL location	RetrieveItinDetailWS failed with InaccessibleWSDLException  An error occurs only when the travel partner asks you to change a WSDL location and you enter it incorrectly.	Manage Travel Partner Integration page

 **Note:** If you see a log file that indicates that the EndSessionWS failed with InaccessibleWSDLException, the Import Travel Itineraries process won't result in an error even if the End Session WSDL location was updated incorrectly. These atypical sessions are removed by your travel partner eventually.

If you want to reset the entries in the WSDL fields to the original values, the following table describes the original WSDL locations.

Web Service Name	Web Service URL
Create Session	http: //webservicesabre. com/ wsdl/sabreXML10. 00/ usg/ SessionCreateRQwsdl
Retrieve Itinerary Locator	http: //webservicesabre. com/ wsdl/sabreXML10. 00/GetThere/GTERP_ TravellItineraryLocatorRead1. 0.0RQ.wsdl
Retrieve Itinerary Details	http: //webservicesabre. com/ wsdl/sabreXML10. 00/GetThere/GTERP_ TravellItineraryRead1. 0.0RQ.wsdl
End Session	http: / / webservicesabre com/ wsdl/ sabreXML10 00/ usg/ SessionCloseRQwsdl

 **Tip:** If web service connection issues persist after ruling out set up issues, contact your travel partner's administrator or your support representative to validate WSDL locations or to determine whether the travel partner's portal or booking site is down. For other unexpected errors, contact Oracle Support.

## Import Travel Itineraries Process Completes with a Warning or Success But Doesn't Import Itineraries

To review warnings, review the log and output details of the Import Travel Itineraries process by performing the steps mentioned in the previous section of this topic.

The following table describes the results when the Import Travel Itineraries process completes with a warning or a success but doesn't import any itineraries.

Invalid Value	Result	Page
Site Identifier	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No errors in the log file.</li><li>The count for new itineraries imported is zero in the output file.</li><li>The Import Travel Itineraries process completes with a warning or success.</li></ul>	<p>Create Booking Site page</p> <p>In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage Travel Partner Integrations page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Offering: Financials</li><li>Task: Manage Travel Partner Integrations</li></ul>

## Import Travel Itineraries Process Completes with a Warning

The Import Travel Itineraries process completes with a warning when:

- Itineraries fail importation
- Itineraries have critical validation errors
- Itineraries have invalid data
- Itineraries have unmatched values

To review warnings, review the log and output details of the Import Travel Itineraries process by performing the steps mentioned in the previous section of this topic.


The following table describes the cause and resolution for itinerary import failures.

Log Error Message	Cause	Resolution
The itinerary could not be imported because it is missing a value in the Status attribute.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The itinerary status is null.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review the import failure message in the <b>Itinerary Import Failures</b> dialog box.</li> <li>The Import Travel Itineraries process automatically reattempts to import failed itineraries for a specified number of user-defined days.</li> <li>If itineraries continue to fail, contact your travel partner's representative to resolve issues.</li> </ol>
The itinerary can't be imported because the time stamp that indicates whether or not the itinerary has been modified is invalid.	The last modified time stamp on the itinerary is null.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review the import failure message in the <b>Itinerary Import Failures</b> dialog box.</li> <li>The Import Travel Itineraries process automatically reattempts to import failed itineraries for a specified number of user-defined days.</li> <li>If itineraries continue to fail, contact your travel partner's representative to resolve issues.</li> </ol>
<p>Missing message text.</p> <p>The itinerary can't be imported because it contains a reservation, which was not reserved and is missing a confirmation number.</p>	Itinerary has a reservation confirmation number that is null.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review the import failure message in the Itinerary Import Failures dialog box. The Import Travel Itineraries process automatically reattempts to import failed itineraries for a specified number of user-defined days.</li> <li>If itineraries continue to fail, contact your travel partner's representative to resolve issues.</li> </ol>
This itinerary can't be imported because the following error was returned by the itinerary details web service: {ERROR}.	<p>An unexpected error occurs while attempting to import the details for an itinerary.</p> <p>The Import Travel Itineraries process continues to import itineraries, even if it encounters an unexpected error with a specific itinerary.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review the import failure message on the Itinerary Import Failures dialog box.</li> <li>The Import Travel Itineraries process automatically reattempts to import failed itineraries for a specified number of user-defined days.</li> <li>If itineraries continue to fail, contact Oracle Support.</li> </ol>
Your request cannot be completed at this time. Verify your request and try again.	Itinerary details can't be retrieved since the itinerary has multiple travelers.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review the import failure message on the Itinerary Import Failures dialog box.</li> <li>The Import Travel Itineraries process automatically reattempts to import failed itineraries for a specified number of user-defined days.</li> <li>Your travel partner does not support itineraries booked for multiple travelers.</li> </ol>



Errors due to a validation failure are resolved by travel administrators. The following table contains the error, cause, and resolution of critical validation errors.

Validation Error	Cause	Resolution
<p>Invalid employee number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The employee number is null.</li> <li>The employee number doesn't match the employee number in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The employee's user profile in your travel partner's site has a null or invalid employee number.</li> <li>The employee number is not sent from your travel partner.</li> <li>The traveler is an applicant and not an employee.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Correct the user profile in your travel partner's site.</li> <li>From the Travel Administration work area, navigate to the Resolve Travel Itinerary Import Errors page.</li> <li>Assign the correct employee to the itinerary.</li> </ol>
Missing reservation pricing information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your travel partner booking site allows employees to book a split flight across two airlines in which pricing is unavailable.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact your corporate travel agency to update the missing pricing information.</li> <li>From the Travel Administration work area, open the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page to update the missing pricing information for that itinerary.</li> <li>To eliminate errors in the future, consider a configuration change at the travel booking site to prevent booking without pricing information.</li> </ol>
Unexpected error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The application encountered an unexpected error while validating an itinerary.</li> <li>The Import Travel Itineraries process continues to import itineraries, even if it encounters an unexpected error with a specific itinerary.</li> </ul>	<p>Review the Import Travel Itineraries process log file by performing the following steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Navigate to the Travel Administrator work area.</li> <li>Select the applicable process.</li> <li>From the Action menu, select <b>View Process Details</b>.</li> <li>In the View Process Details dialog box, click the log .txt file.</li> <li>If you can't diagnose the error, contact Oracle Support.</li> </ol>

 **Note:** After itinerary import failures and critical validation errors are resolved, rerun the Import Travel Itineraries process in the Validate only process mode to remove errors so a trip can be automatically created from itinerary import.

The following table describes the validation error, cause, and resolution of invalid data validation errors.

Validation Error	Cause	Resolution
Invalid data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Missing data</li> <li>Invalid data format</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Travel Administration work area, open the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page.</li> <li>Correct the errors and rerun the Import Travel Itineraries process to revalidate the errors or wait for the next scheduled Import Travel Itineraries process to revalidate.</li> </ol>


Validation Error	Cause	Resolution
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Contact your travel partner and take steps to prevent future errors.</li> </ol>

The following table describes the validation error type, cause, and resolution of unmatched value validation errors.

Validation Error	Cause	Resolution
Unmatched values for policy violation.	Missing booking policy violation mapping	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Review the values on the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page and select the correct policy violation.</li> <li>2. To add missing booking policy violation mapping to reference data, create a new lookup code for the lookup EXM_POL_VIOLATIONS_TYPES and define the meaning with the booking policy violation text.</li> <li>3. To enforce booking policy violation validation for booking sites set up in a foreign language, define the booking policy violation as the lookup code meaning for the foreign language.</li> <li>4. If you use a company-defined lookup type for policy violation validation, add the new policy violations as lookup codes for this company-defined lookup type.</li> <li>5. If a lookup code for the missing booking policy violation already exists, ensure that the lookup code meaning is defined exactly as the booking policy violation that is provided by your travel partner.</li> </ol>
Unmatched value for airline, hotel, rail, car rental code, or name.	Missing merchant codes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Review the values in the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page and select the correct merchant code.</li> <li>2. To add missing merchant codes to merchant reference data, navigate to the Travel Administration work area.</li> <li>3. Click the Manage Merchants link.</li> <li>4. Download the spreadsheet, add new merchants, and upload.</li> </ol>
Unmatched value for class of ticket for air reservation	Missing class of air ticket	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Review the values in the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page and select the correct air ticket class.</li> <li>2. To add a missing class of air ticket to reference data, create a new lookup code for the lookup type EXM_TICKET_CLASS and define the meaning with the class of air ticket.</li> <li>3. To enforce class of air ticket validation for booking sites setup in a foreign language, define the class of air ticket as the lookup code meaning for the foreign language.</li> <li>4. If you use a company-defined lookup type for class of air ticket validation,</li> </ol>

Validation Error	Cause	Resolution
		<p>add the new class of air ticket as lookup codes for this company-defined lookup type.</p> <p>5. If a lookup code for the missing class of air ticket already exists, ensure that the lookup code meaning is defined exactly as the class of air ticket provided by your travel partner.</p>
Unmatched value for location.	Missing location	<p>1. Review the values in the Review Travel Itinerary Import Results page and select the correct location.</p> <p>2. To add a missing location to reference data, define missing locations in Oracle Fusion Trading Community Architecture that map to the city, state, and country values sent by your travel partner.</p> <p>Navigation: Setup and Maintenance work area &gt; Manage Geographies task &gt; Manage Geographies page.</p>

## Managing Trip Expense Reports

 **Watch:** This video tutorial shows you how to manage trip expense reports if your company is integrated with GetThere, a corporate travel service. The content of this video is also covered in text topics.

## Automatic Trip Expense Reports

Your company can choose whether to automatically or manually create expense reports from business trips. A business trip is a collection of items that make up an employee's business travel. For example, a trip may include a travel itinerary and a cash advance. The contents of an automatic trip expense report is based on whether an employee was issued a corporate card or uses cash only. The application automatically creates a trip expense report if the employee selects the application to initiate report creation on the Expenses Preferences page.

If an employee was issued a corporate card, the automatic trip expense report contains corporate card transactions. Expenses attempts to match the travel itinerary reservation with a corporate card transaction.

If an employee doesn't have a corporate card, the automatic trip expense report process creates a report with cash expense items that correspond to each travel reservation item. Other nontravel cash expenses generated by the employee aren't included in this trip expense report.

To automate expense reports based on trips, the following people perform these setup tasks:

- The system administrator chooses to automate trip expense reports.
- Each employee selects the timing of the automatic trip expense reports.

## Allow Automatic Trip Expense Reports

If your company chooses to automate expense reports from trips, your implementor selects Yes from the Enable Expense Report Automatic Creation choice list in the Processing Options for Expense Report section on the Manage System Options page.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the Manage System Options page:


- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Task: Manage Expenses System Options

## Select Timing of Automatic Trip Expense Reports

Once your implementor chooses to automate expense reports from business trips, employees can then select whether they want themselves or Expenses to initiate automatic trip expense reports. Employees specify their preference by selecting an option in the Expense Report Automatically Created from Trip section. Navigation: **User's name choice list > Set Preferences > Expenses Preferences**

The following table describes the timing of the initiation options.

Initiation Option	Description
Employee initiates	Employee selects a trip on the Trips page in the Expenses work area and clicks Create Report from Trip or navigates to the Edit Travel Itinerary page.
Application initiates upon first expenditure	<p>This option is the default value. The process, Process Trip Expense Report, automatically creates an expense report when the first corporate card transaction related to a trip is uploaded to Expenses.</p> <p>When the process is subsequently run, the expense report is updated with any new corporate card transactions that are related to the trip.</p> <p>If a new expense report is needed, the application creates one. For example, the application generated one expense report, which was submitted for approvals. Any remaining transactions are added to a new trip expense report.</p>
Application initiates upon trip completion	<p>The process, Process Trip Expense Report, automatically creates an expense report when a trip is completed that contains corporate card transactions that are related to the completed trip.</p> <p>When the process is subsequently run, the expense report is updated with any new corporate card transactions that are related to the trip.</p> <p>If a new expense report is needed, the application creates one. For example, the application generated one expense report, which was submitted for approvals. Any remaining transactions are added to a new trip expense report.</p>

 **Tip:** Mobile device users who download corporate card transactions and submit them from their mobile devices are advised to select the Employee initiates option.

# 5 Cash Advances

## Cash Advance Approval Rules

Cash advance approval rules are configurable rules for approving cash advances. A cash advance is an advance payment to an employee that covers out-of-pocket and incidental expenses while traveling or legitimate business expenses.

Oracle Fusion Expenses integrates with Approvals Management Extensions of the Oracle Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) suite and Oracle Business Process Management Suite (BPM) to allow deploying companies to build flexible approval routing rules. This ensures that proper approval authority is enforced.

The BPM Worklist provides an interface to administer the cash advance approval rules based on your company's business needs. A BPM Worklist administrator, such as a user with the Financial Application Administrator (FUN\_FINANCIAL\_APPLICATION\_ADMINISTRATOR) role can access the cash advance approval rules in the BPM Worklist.

When you submit a cash advance request, Expenses invokes the cash advance approval process, which in turn invokes a set of cash advance approval rules created in AMX to build the list of approvers. AMX then sends out approval notifications to the approvers identified by the cash advance approval rules. This process is repeated until all cash advance approvals are complete.

The predefined cash advance approval rule routes every cash advance request by an employee to his or her immediate supervisor for approval. Once the immediate supervisor approves the cash advance request, it is automatically sent to the expense auditor for final approval.

If you are authorized to manage cash advance approval rules, you can:

- Navigate to the BPM Worklist.
- Modify the predefined cash advance rule.

## Navigate to the BPM Worklist

The cash advance approval rules are managed through the BPM Worklist application. Users who are authorized to manage the cash advance approval rules see an Administration link displayed in the corner of the application.

To create new rules or modify existing rules, click the Administration link, click the Task Configuration tab, click the Data Driven tab, and then select the FinExmWorkflowCashAdvanceApproval approval flow in the panel. The cash advance approval flow contains the predefined rule set: Approval by immediate supervisor.

## Modify the Predefined Cash Advance Rule

The predefined rule set for approval of cash advances using the supervisory hierarchy is called CashAdvanceApprovalStage: CashAdvanceApprovalRuleSet. This predefined cash advance rule defines the approval of cash advances of any amounts by the immediate supervisor.

You can modify the predefined cash advance rule by performing any of the following tasks:

- Modifying the predefined cash advance rule
- Adding new cash advance rules
- Deleting existing cash advance rules

The following table contains parameters for the predefined CashAdvanceApprovalStage : CashAdvanceApprovalRuleSet rule set that you can modify to accommodate your cash advance approval needs.

Field	Predefined Value	Description
List Builder	Supervisory	This rule set uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.
Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
Number of Levels	1	The maximum number of supervisory levels required for completion of cash advance approval. You can modify the numbers of levels required by changing the value. For example, if you change 1 to 2, two levels of approvals will be required.
Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getManager("supervisory"Task. creator -1,"","")	The first approver in the approval chain.
Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder. getPrincipal("FINUSER30"-1,"","")	<p>The last approver in the approval chain.</p> <p>The approval process does not go beyond this participant in the approval hierarchy.</p> <p>To use this rule without additional modification, you must change the predefined last approver user name to the last approver name in your organization, cost center, or department.</p>
Auto Action Enabled	False	This parameter enables or disables the automatic approval action.
Auto Action	Null	The type of automatic approval action taken, such as Approve or Reject.

The administrator of the cash advance approval rules can perform the following modifications:

- Create additional rules.

For example, you can define new rules to conform to your company's cash advance approval policies.

- Add additional levels of supervisory approval.

For example, if the cash advance amount exceeds the threshold that the administrator configured, the cash advance request is sent to the next supervisory level for approval.

- Set up automatic cash advance approval.

For example, if the cash advance amount is under a certain amount, then the cash advance is automatically approved and it does not require the supervisor's approval. This feature expedites the approval process for smaller amounts, since the need to wait for the supervisor's approval is eliminated.


To modify an existing cash advance approval rule in the Data Driven configuration page, select the rule set to modify and click the Edit icon in the Tasks to be configured pane. You can now add, modify, or delete rules within the specified rule set. The changes take effect when you click the Commit Task icon in the Tasks to be configured pane. Saving changes by clicking the Save icon saves the changes, but it does not activate them. If needed, you can undo changes by clicking the Reset icon.

## Upload a Cash Advance File from a Third-Party System

You can provide cash advance data using a comma-separated plain text .csv file that is uploaded to Oracle Universal Content Management using the File Import and Export page. After the file is uploaded, the expense auditor runs the Upload Cash Advance process from the Scheduled Processes page.

Valid cash advance records are created or updated directly into the cash advance tables. Rejected records are listed in the output file, along with the reason for rejection.

The following table contains fields in the cash advance file that you create in TextPad and upload.

 **Note:** Each line in TextPad must contain at least 10 elements. If more than 10 elements are used, it's assumed that the Purpose field contains one or more commas and these extra fields are concatenated.

Field	Required	Notes	Maximum Characters
Cash Advance Number	Yes	Not applicable	60
Person Number	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Either the person number or the email must be provided.</li><li>If both, they must match.</li><li>A valid and active employee record must exist.</li><li>When a person has multiple assignments, only the current assignment is used.</li></ul>	120
Email	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Either the person number or the email must be provided.</li><li>If both, they must match.</li></ul>	960
Unapplied Amount	Yes	Not applicable	18
Status	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Status must be either APPROVAL_COMPLETE or PAID.</li><li>For a status of PAID, indicate the unapplied amount.</li></ul>	30
Cash Advance Type	Yes	Must be one of the existing lookup codes for the EXM_CASH_ADVANCE_TYPE lookup	30

Field	Required	Notes	Maximum Characters
		type. The values are OTHER and TRAVEL.	
Due Date	No	MMDDYYYY	8
Trip Start Date	No	MMDDYYYY	8
Trip End Date	No	MMDDYYYY	8
Purpose	Yes	This last field can contain commas.	240

## Uploading the Cash Advance File

To upload the cash advance file, follow these steps:

1. Sign in to Expenses as the expense auditor.
2. Navigate to: **Navigator > Tools > File Import and Export**.
3. On the File Import and Export page, click the **Upload (+)** icon.
4. In the **Upload File** dialog box, click **Browse** to find the file that you want to upload.
5. From the Account choice list, select **fin/expenses/import**.
6. Click **Save and Close**.

## Running the Upload Cash Advance Process

To run the Upload Cash Advance process, follow these steps:

1. Navigate to: **Navigator > Tools > Scheduled Processes**.
2. On the Scheduled Processes page, click **Schedule New Process**.
3. In the **Schedule New Process** dialog box, select the Job option.
4. From the Name choice list, select **Upload Cash Advances** and click **OK**.
5. In the **Process Details** dialog box in the **File Name** field, enter the same file name that you uploaded in Step 4 in the previous task.
6. From the Allow update of existing records choice list, select **Yes** and click **Submit**.

If you select **Yes**, you can update existing cash advances. If you select **No**, you can't update existing cash advances. You can only create new cash advances.

 **Note:** If you select **Yes** to update an existing record, but the existing cash advance has already been invoiced, the record is rejected.

7. Click the **Refresh** icon.  
The upload cash advance details appear.
8. Review the .log and .txt files by clicking the attachment links.
9. Sign out as the expense auditor.
10. Sign in to Expenses as an employee.
11. From the Expenses work area, review the Cash Advances infotile.



## How Accounting Entries for Cash Advances Are Distributed

When a cash advance is paid to an employee, the amount to be reclaimed from the employee is tracked in the Cash Advance Clearing account. Then, when the cash advance is applied to an expense report, the amount is reversed from the clearing account.

The following table shows an example of a cash advance of 500 USD and an expense report with a total amount of 500 USD.

Document	Amount
Cash Advance	500 USD
Expense Report	700 USD

Data in the preceding table is used in subsequent sections to illustrate how accounting entries are distributed when each document is processed.

## Setting That Affects Accounting Entries

The setting that affects accounting entries for cash advances is the Cash Advance Clearing account on the Manage Expenses System Options page. This setting can only be implemented for a business unit.

The clearing account for each cash advance is derived by overlaying the natural account from the Cash Advance Clearing account on the Default Expense account of the employee.

## How Accounting Entries are Distributed

After a cash advance is approved and audited, it is processed to Oracle Payables as a payment request.

The following table summarizes the accounting distribution that is generated when the cash advance is processed in Payables.

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash Advance Clearing	500 USD	Not applicable
Employee Liability	Not applicable	500 USD

The following table summarizes the accounting distribution that is generated when the cash advance is applied to the expense report and the expense report is processed in Payables.

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash Advance Clearing	Not applicable	500 USD
Employee Liability: Reclaim cash advance	500 USD	Not applicable
Employee Liability: Expense report	Not applicable	700 USD
Expense	700 USD	Not applicable

# 6 Spend Authorizations

## Overview of Spend Authorizations

A spend authorization is a request by an employee for approval of estimated expenses for a future activity. A spend authorization request proceeds through the following process, which the employee initiates:

- Employee submits a spend authorization request
- Manager approves the spend authorization request
- Employee submits an expense report

### Employee Submits a Spend Authorization Request

The process for a spend authorization begins when an employee requests authorization for future expenses. The employee completes the Request Authorization page by clicking the Authorizations infotile on the Oracle Expenses work area. Expenses tracks all requests by an employee for authorization of future expenses.

### Manager Approves the Spend Authorization Request

The employee submits the spend authorization request to his manager for approval. If the manager rejects the request or requests more information, Expenses returns the request to the employee who takes appropriate action.

### Employee Submits an Expense Report

After incurring business expenses, the employee creates and submits an expense report to his manager for approval. When an approved spend authorization request exists, the employer may require the employee to attach it to the expense report at either the expense report header or at the lines.

Attaching the spend authorization to the expense report allows managers and expense auditors to compare approved estimated expenses against incurred expenses. If budgetary control is enabled, the employee may be alerted when he makes expense report entries that are contrary to a previous authorization. Such violations are visible to the manager and the expense auditor.

## How You Configure Spend Authorization Request Approval Rules

You can configure approval rules for approval of spend authorization requests. Oracle Business Process Management Suite (BPM) provides the UI to administer and manage approval rules. A BPM Worklist administrator can access approval rules in the BPM Worklist if he is assigned the role of Financial Application Administrator (FUN\_FINANCIAL\_APPLICATION\_ADMINISTRATOR).

When you submit a spend authorization request for approval, Expenses invokes the approval process. The approval process prompts a set of approval rules created in the BPM Worklist to build the list of approvers. After an approver responds to an

approval notification, BPM sends an approval notification to the next approver. BPM continues sending approval notifications to the approvers in the approval hierarchy until all approvals are complete.

To configure or modify spend authorization rules, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to navigate to the BPM Worklist:
  - o Offering: Financials
  - o Functional Area: Expenses
  - o Task: Manage Expense Approval Rules
2. In the BPM Worklist, select the Task Configuration tab.
3. From the Tasks to be configured pane, select **FinExmWorkflowSpendAuthorization**.
4. Select the Assignees tab.
5. Click the **Switch to Vertical Layout** link. An approval hierarchy displays.
6. On the Authorization rectangle, click the **diamond** icon and select **Go to rule**.

The spend authorization approval flow contains a predefined rule set with its associated approvers as described in the following table.

Rule Set	Approver
SpendAuthorizationRuleSet	Supervisor
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SpendAuthorizationManagerRule</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Approval rule with one level of supervisory hierarchy</li></ul>


## SpendAuthorizationRuleSet: Approval by Supervisor

The predefined rule set for approval of spend authorization that uses the supervisory hierarchy is called SpendAuthorizationRuleSet. The predefined rule is as follows:

**Approval by the immediate supervisor of spend authorizations with a total over 0**

You can change the predefined rules, delete, or add rules as needed. The following table lists the parameters for the SpendAuthorizationRuleSet.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
SpendAuthorizationManagerApprovalRule	Condition	AuthorizedTotal is same or greater than 0	Attribute that stores the spend authorization request total in the reimbursement currency.
	List Builder	Supervisory	The rule uses the supervisory hierarchy to retrieve approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Number of levels	1	Number of supervisory levels required for approval completion.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
	Starting Participant	HierarchyBuilder.getManager("supervisory", Task.payload.ownerUserName-1,"","")	Person for whom the spend authorization is requested.
	Top Participant	HierarchyBuilder.getPrincipal("FINUSER30", -1,"","")	Last approver in the approval chain. Approval doesn't go beyond this participant in a hierarchy. To use this rule as is, you must change the predefined last approver user name to the last approver in your organization.
 <b>Note:</b> This must be changed to reflect the last approver in your organization.			
	Auto Action Enabled	False	Automatic approval action is disabled.
	Auto Action	Null	No automatic approval action.
	Rule Name	SpendAuthorizationManagerRule	Name of rule.


## Options for Setting Up Spend Authorizations with Budgetary Control

A spend authorization is a request by an employee for approval of estimated expenses for a future activity. For example, if an employee plans a business trip, he or she can request approval for anticipated expenses before taking the trip.

When you set up spend authorizations, you can consider these options:

- Enable spend authorizations
- Specify attachment location of spend authorizations
- Define spend authorization behavior
- Specify spend authorization numbering
- Control visibility of spend authorizations
- Enable budgetary control

You can set up spend authorizations for all business units in your organization or you can create exceptions for specific business units.

 **Note:** Before you start, you must first select a business unit in Oracle Expenses on the Authorizations tab of the Edit Specific Business Unit dialog box. Doing this enables budgetary control to validate anticipated expenses against a specific budget, ledger, and business unit.

## Enable Spend Authorizations

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use:

- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Expenses
- Task: Manage Cash Advance and Authorization Policies

To enable spend authorizations on the Manage Cash Advance and Authorization Policies page, select **Yes** from the Enable Authorizations choice list.

## Specify Attachment Location

You can allow employees to attach an approved spend authorization at the expense report header level or at the expense line level.

To specify the attachment location of spend authorizations on expense reports, from the Attach Authorization choice list, select **Header Only**, **Lines Only**, or **No**.

 **Note:** The **Header Only** option is only applicable when budgetary control isn't enabled.

## Define Spend Authorization Behavior

Depending on your business needs, you can specify the attachment of a spend authorization to an expense report as optional or required. From the Behavior choice list, select **Optional** or **Required**.

## Specify Spend Authorization Numbering

You can optionally specify alphanumeric prefixes for spend authorization identification numbers.

To specify a prefix such as SA, that stands for Spend Authorization, enter a value in the **Prefix** field.

## Control Visibility of Spend Authorizations

Approved spend authorizations are visible in the Expenses work area or from the authorization selection choice list for the number of days you specify in the **Visibility in Days** field. The default value is 180 days. You can either increase or decrease the number of days by one or you can enter any positive whole number directly.

## Check or Reserve Funds

Depending on your business requirements, you can choose to only check funds or to reserve funds by selecting the **Check funds** or **Reserve funds** option. If you select **Check funds**, you can decide whether to present a warning to employees if funds are insufficient to cover an estimated expense. The warning options are **Yes** or **No**.

## Enable Budgetary Control


If you want to check funds to determine whether sufficient funds are available for estimated expenses, you must enable budgetary control. To enable budgetary control in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use:

- Offering: Financials
- Functional Area: Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting
- Task: Manage Budgetary Control

Complete these steps:

1. On the Manage Budgetary Control page, click the applicable business unit.
2. On the Edit Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting page near Budgetary Control, select the **Enable** check box.
3. Select **Yes** from the Enabled choice list for the business function, Expense Management.
4. Click the corresponding Transaction Type Details icon and enable the transaction subtype of **Spend authorization expense item** for the transaction type of **Spend authorization** by selecting **Yes**.
5. From the Enabled choice list for the business function, Payables Invoicing, select **Yes**.
6. Click the corresponding Transaction Type Details icon and enable the transaction subtype of **Spend authorization payment request** for the transaction type of **Invoice** by selecting **Yes**.

## Video

 **Watch:** This video tutorial shows you how to request a spend authorization for an upcoming trip. After you return from the trip, we will create an expense report and attach the approved spend authorization lines to their respective expense items in the report.

## Worked Example

In this example, you request a spend authorization for an upcoming trip. After you return from the trip, you will create an expense report and attach the approved spend authorization lines to their respective expense items in the report.

This topic show you how to:

- Create a spend authorization.
- Approve the spend authorization.
- Create an expense report and attach authorization lines.
- Submit the expense report.

## Create a Spend Authorization

To create a spend authorization, complete these steps:

1. Sign in as an employee.
2. Click the **House** icon

3. On the Home page, click **Me > Expenses > Travel and Expenses work area**.
4. In the Travel and Expenses work area, click the Actions menu.
5. Select the **Request Authorization** option.
6. On the Request Authorization page in the **Purpose** field, enter **Oracle Open World**.
7. From the Expense Location choice list, search and select **United States**.
8. From the **State Date** field, enter a date one month from today's date.
9. From the **End Date** field, enter a date that is four days after the Start Date.
10. Click the **Create** icon near the Estimated Expenses section.
11. On the Estimate Expense page from the Template choice list, select **Travel**.
12. From the Type choice list, select **Airfare**.
13. From the Amount choice list, select **USD**.
14. In the field near the Amount choice list, enter **650.00**.
15. In the **Description** field, enter **Airfare to Oracle Open Word**.
16. Click **Save and Create Another**.
17. On the Estimate Expense page from the Template choice list, select **Travel**.
18. From the Type choice list, select **Meals**.
19. From the Amount choice list, select **USD**.
20. In the field near the Amount field, enter **375.00**.
21. In the **Description** field, enter **Meals at Oracle Open World**.
22. Click **Save and Create Another**.
23. On the Estimate Expense page from the Template choice list, select **Travel**.
24. From the Type choice list, select **Hotel**.
25. From the Amount choice list, select **USD**.
26. In the field near the Amount choice list, enter **800.00**.
27. In the **Description** field, enter **Accommodations at Oracle Open World**.
28. Click **Save and Close**.
29. On the Authorization page, click **Submit**.

## Approve the Spend Authorization

To approve the spend authorization as the manager, complete these steps:

1. Sign out as an employee.
2. Sign in as a manager.
3. On the springboard, click the **Bell** icon.
4. From the Notifications choice list, select **Pending Notifications**.
5. Locate the spend authorization you just created and click the **Action Required: Authorization Approval** link.
6. On the approval form for the spend authorization, click **Approve**.
7. In the Approve dialog box, enter the following in the **Comment** field: I approve this spend authorization request for the trip to Oracle Open World.
8. Click **Submit**.
9. Click **Approve**.
10. Sign out as a manager.
11. Sign in as an employee.
12. In the Travel and Expenses work area, click the Authorizations infotile.
13. Click the **Approved** link on the Authorizations infotile.



## Create an Expense Report and Attach Authorization Lines

To create the expense report and attach authorization lines to the expense items, complete these steps:

1. In the Travel and Expenses work area, click the Expense Reports infotile.
2. Click the **Create** icon.
3. On the Create Expense Report page in the **Purpose** field, enter **Attended Oracle Open World**.
4. Click **Save**.
5. Click **Create Item** near the Expense Items section.
6. On the Create Expense Item page from the Template choice list, select **Travel**.
7. From the Type choice list, select **Airfare**.
8. From the Expense Location choice list, search and select **United States**.
9. Click **OK**.
10. From the Amount choice list, select **USD**.
11. In the field near the Amount choice list, enter **650.00**.
12. In the **Description** field, enter **Airfare to Oracle Open World**.
13. Click the **Attach** icon near Authorization.
14. In the Select Estimated Expense dialog box from the Authorization choice list, select the authorization you created.
15. Select the Airfare authorization line.
16. Click the **OK**.
17. On the Create Expense Item page, click **Create Another**.
18. On the Create Expense Item page from the Template choice list, select **Travel**.
19. From the Type choice list, select **Meals**.
20. From the Expense Location choice list, search and select **United States**.
21. From the Amount choice list, select **USD**.
22. In the field near the Amount choice list, enter **110.00**.
23. In the **Description** field, enter **Meals at Oracle Open World**.
24. Click the **Attach** icon near Authorization.
25. In the Select Estimated Expense dialog box from the Authorization choice list, select the authorization you created.
26. Select the Meals authorization line.
27. Click **OK**.
28. On the Create Expense Item page, click **Create Another**.
29. On the Create Expense Item page from the Template choice list, select **Travel**.
30. From the Type choice list, select **Hotel**.
31. From the Expense Location choice list, select **United States**.
32. From the Amount choice list, select **USD**.
33. In the field near the Amount choice list, enter **800.00**.
34. In the **Description** field, enter **Hotel stay at Oracle Open World**.
35. In the Itemization section, enter these values:

Field Name	Entry
Type choice list	Room Charge
Daily Amount	200.00
Days	4
Amount	800.00

36. In the Itemization section, click the **Attachment** icon near Authorization.
37. On the Select Estimated Expense dialog box from the Authorization choice list, select the authorization you created.
38. Select the Hotel authorization line.
39. Click **OK**.
40. Click **Save and Close**.

## Submit the Expense Report

1. On the Expense Report page, select the **I have read and accept the corporate travel and expense policies** check box.
2. Click **Submit**.
3. In the warning that indicates one or more required imaged receipts are not attached, click **Yes**.

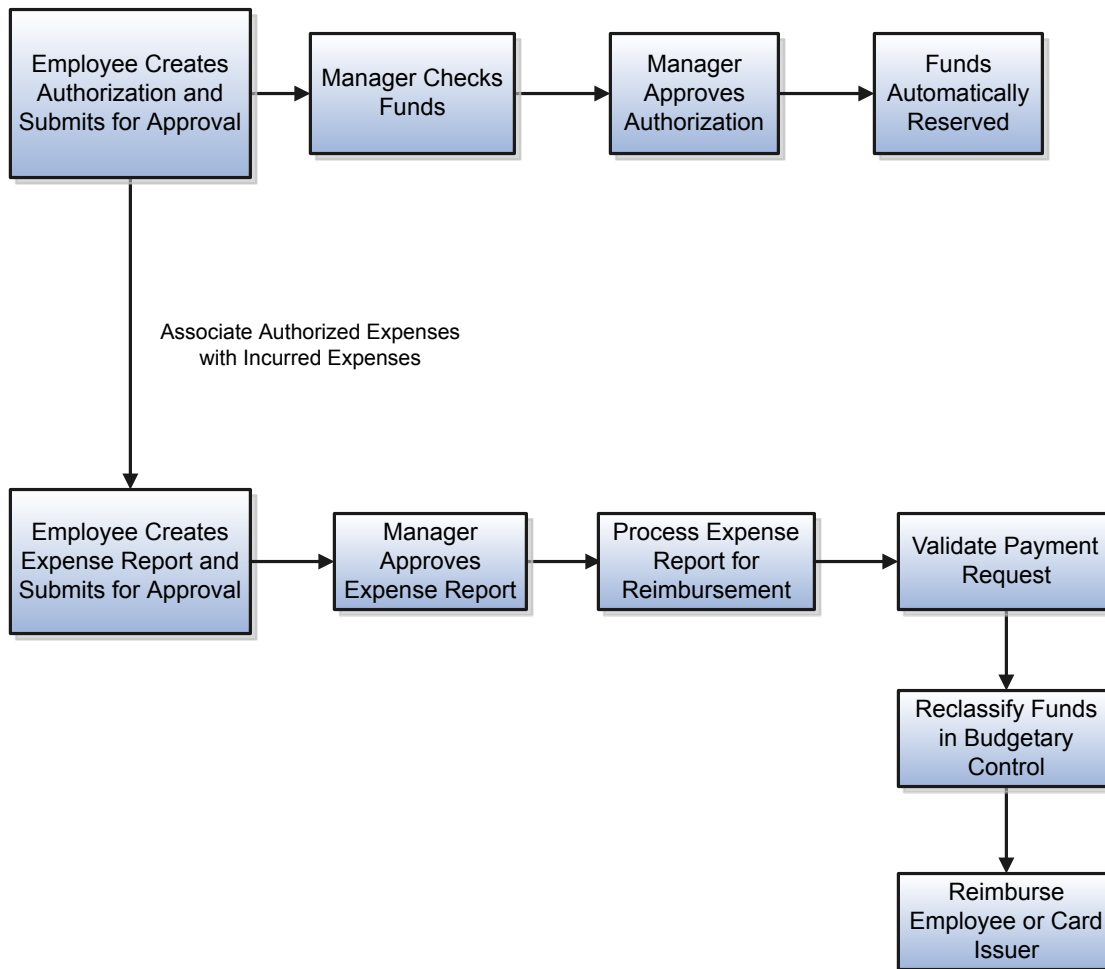
## How Budgetary Control and Spend Authorizations Work Together

If your organization requires the ability to track and control expenditures against a budget, you can enable Oracle Budgetary Control. This is especially helpful for public sector and commercial organizations that require:

- Visibility into budget commitments and expenditures
- Adherence to legal requirements
- Control of excessive spending
- Approval of anticipated expenses
- Validation of anticipated expenses against a specific budget for an applicable ledger and business unit

To support this requirement, Expenses integrates with Budgetary Control. The process begins when an employee creates and submits a spend authorization for approval. The approving manager checks whether funds are available against the budget and optionally views the results. When the manager approves the spend authorization, funds are automatically reserved. After the employee incurs expenses, he or she creates an expense report and attaches the approved spend authorization estimated lines to it. After the manager approves the expense report, it's processed for reimbursement, which results in a payment request. The payment request generates an invoice, which is validated, and subsequently the employee or the card issuer is paid.

This diagram shows how the spend authorization and the budgetary control process work together to control excessive spending.



## Effects of Enabling Budgetary Control

When your company enables budgetary control, these actions are available:

- When an employee submits a spend authorization for approval, Budgetary Control evaluates whether funds are available for the anticipated expenses for a specific business unit, ledger, and budget date.
- The status of the funds check is visible to the approving manager.
- The approving manager can recheck funds and view results directly from the authorization approval notification.
- After the manager approves a spend authorization, funds are reserved automatically.
- After the employee incurs expenses, he or she can associate the approved spend authorization with the actual expenses and submit the expense report for approval.



# 7 Image Processing

## How Receipt Images Are Processed

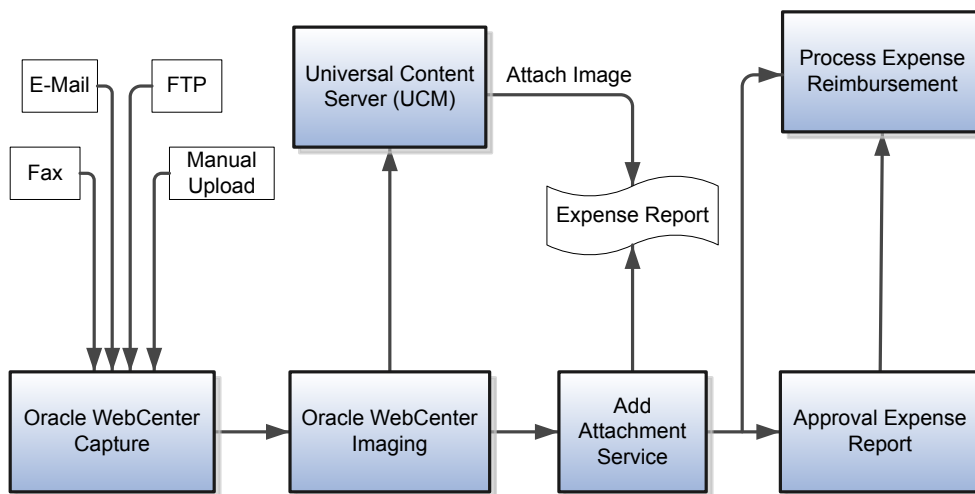
To ensure the validity of employee expenses, companies often require their employees to submit receipts for their expenses. Organizations vary in their receipt submission requirements. Common methods of receipt submission include faxing or emailing receipts to accounts payables. You can enable receipt of expense-related images by fax, email, or from a file location on a server. Oracle Expenses Cloud integrates with Oracle WebCenter Imaging and Oracle WebCenter Capture. This integration enables automatic attachment of receipt images to their respective expense reports.

**Note:** When you configure the application to require receipt images before manager approval, the expense reports aren't routed for approval until receipts are received. That is, Oracle WebCenter Imaging calls the approval process after the receipt images are received.

Before you can properly configure the application with Oracle WebCenter Imaging and Oracle WebCenter Capture to process receipt images, you must first understand the receipt image process.

**Note:** Expenses Cloud accepts images only through email. Fax isn't supported with Expenses Cloud.

The following figure illustrates the receipt image process.



## How Receipt Images Are Processed


Receipt images are processed in the following stages:

- Oracle WebCenter Capture receives receipt images.
- Oracle WebCenter Capture processes the receipt image file to identify the expense report identifier.

- Oracle WebCenter Imaging retrieves images for further processing and calls the Add Attachment to Expense Report service.

You can send receipt images to Oracle WebCenter Capture by fax, email, or by uploading receipt image files to a folder location that is accessible by Oracle WebCenter Capture. You can upload receipt image files to a specific location manually or by using a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) process.

Oracle WebCenter Capture checks for receipt image files in predefined folders for each method of delivery. It scans the receipt image file for a barcode, derives the expense report identifier, and creates a text file for each receipt image file. The receipt image files and corresponding text files are transferred by Oracle WebCenter Capture to a predefined folder that is accessible by Oracle WebCenter Imaging.

 **Note:** You must print the printable expense report page and fax or email it as the first page of your receipt images. The first page of the receipt image file must be the printable expense report page with the barcode. Otherwise Oracle WebCenter Capture can't accurately process the receipt image file.

Oracle WebCenter Imaging scans the predefined folder for receipt image files and the corresponding text files with expense report identifiers for attachment to expense reports. Oracle WebCenter Imaging then stores the receipt image file in the Universal Content Management server. It then passes the location address of the receipt image file in Universal Content Management to the Add Attachment to Expense Report service. The Add Attachment to Expense Report service creates the attachments for the expense report in the attachments tables in Oracle Applications Cloud.

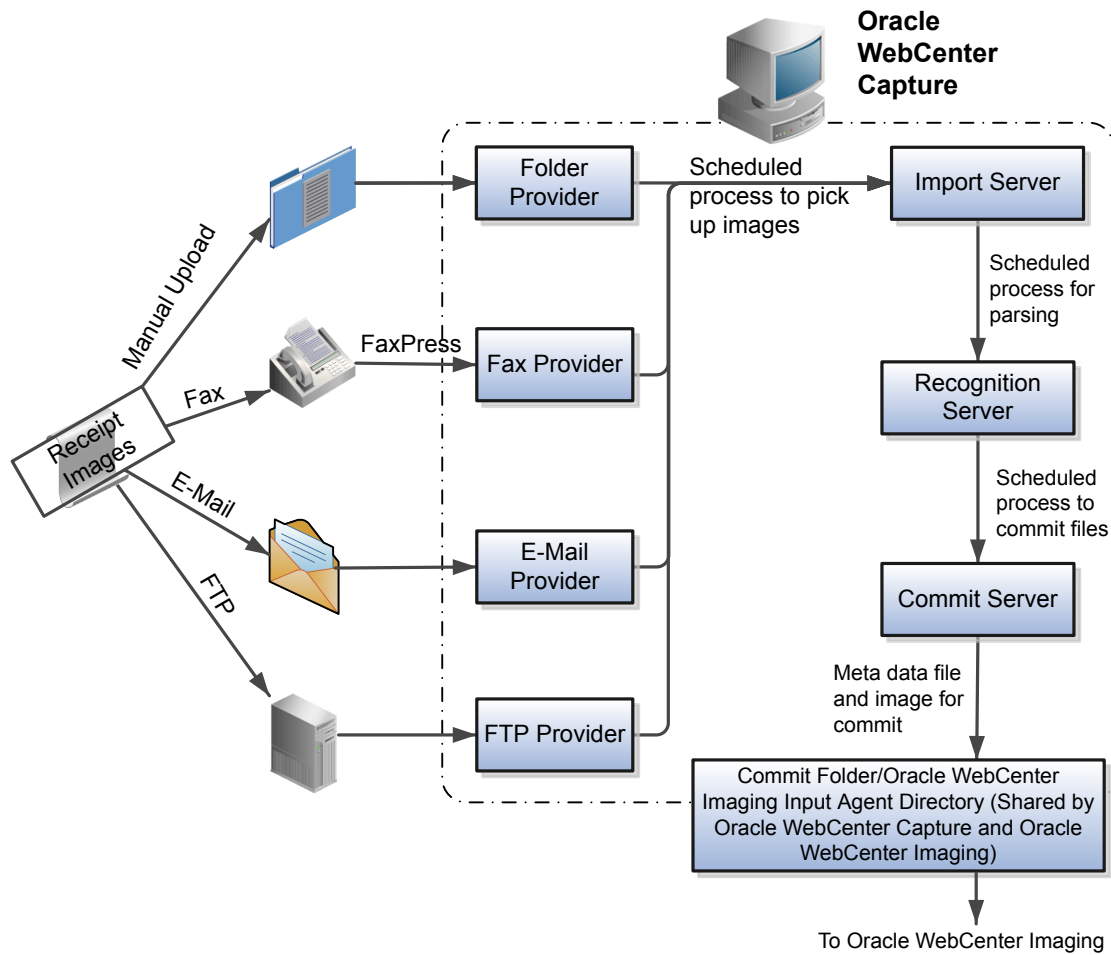
## How Receipt Image-Processing Components Work Together

Oracle Expenses Cloud uses Oracle WebCenter Capture and Oracle WebCenter Imaging to receive and process receipt image files. Using these services, the application can automatically attach receipts to expense reports and users can navigate to the Expenses work area to view expense report attachments. To store the receipt images, Oracle WebCenter Imaging uses Universal Content Management.

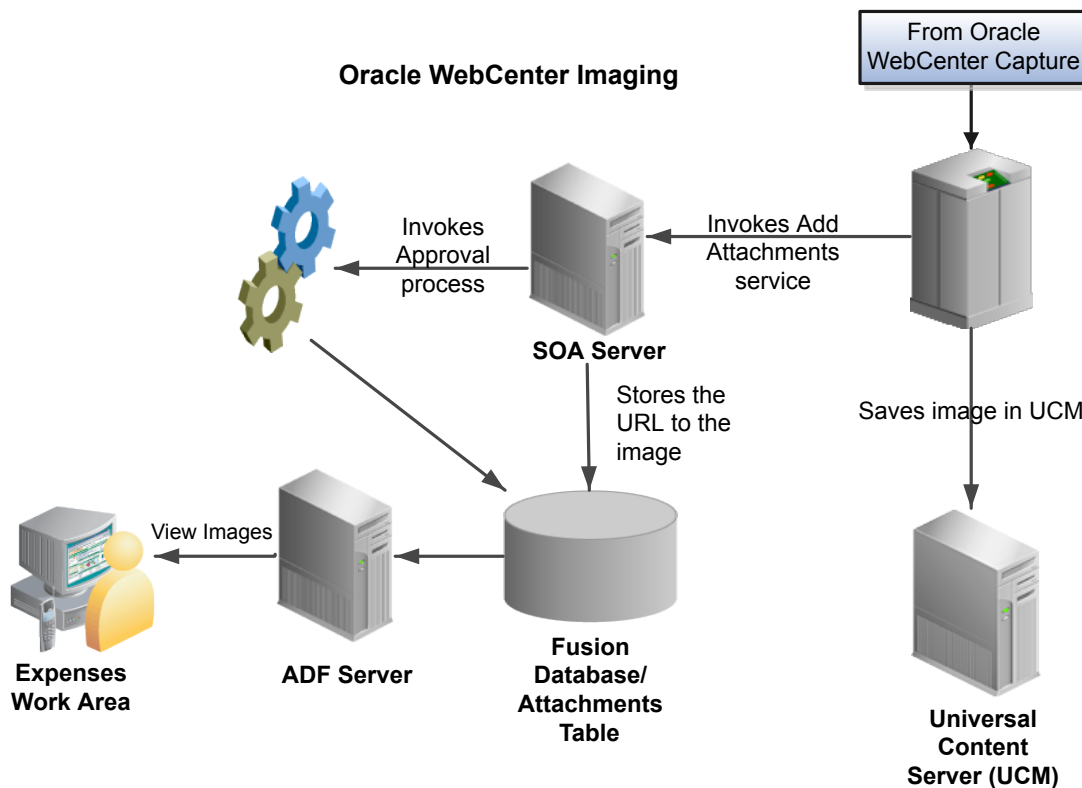
 **Note:** Setup is applicable only for Expenses On-Premises implementations. For Expenses Cloud, setup is predefined.

The following figure illustrates the Oracle WebCenter Capture components that affect receipt image processing.

 **Note:** Expenses Cloud accepts images only through email. Fax isn't supported with Expenses Cloud.



The following figure illustrates the Oracle WebCenter Imaging components that affect receipt image processing.



## Oracle WebCenter Capture

The receipt images sent to Oracle WebCenter Capture by fax, email, or uploaded to a folder location, whether manually or automatically, are received by components called providers. For each method of receipt image delivery, a corresponding provider receives the image. The following types of providers support the methods of receipt image delivery:

- The fax provider receives images sent to Oracle WebCenter Capture by fax.
- The email provider receives images sent to Oracle WebCenter Capture by email.
- The FTP provider receives images sent to a file location that is accessible by Oracle WebCenter Capture.
- The folder provider receives images manually uploaded to a file location that is accessible by Oracle WebCenter Capture.

Your company must configure the necessary providers to support the delivery methods that are applicable to its business. For detailed information about configuring providers, see the Oracle WebCenter Capture User's Guide.

Oracle WebCenter Capture is composed of the following components that receive and process image files:

- Providers
- Import server:
  - Imports documents from providers
  - Looks for images on a scheduled frequency
  - Retrieves and stores receipt images in a folder



- Recognition server:
  - Checks for images
  - Parses the barcode in the receipt image file to derive the expense report identifier
- ✎ **Note:** If there are multiple receipt image files with the same barcode number, Oracle WebCenter Capture creates a single metadata file. This single receipt image file can contain multiple pages of receipt images.
- Commit server:
  - Creates the metadata file with the extension .exmdat, which contains the expense report identifier and the image location
  - Transfers receipt image and metadata files to the commit folder that Oracle WebCenter Imaging accesses to look for receipt image files that are waiting to be processed

## Oracle Image Processing and Management

Oracle WebCenter Imaging uses one component, the input agent directory, to process receipt image files. The input agent directory is the location where Oracle WebCenter Imaging scans for receipt images and the metadata files to process. This directory and the Oracle WebCenter Capture commit folder point to the same storage host, which is configured at the time of deployment.

Oracle WebCenter Imaging is configured to retrieve files from the input agent directory and checks the directory periodically for new files. Based on the configuration in the input definition Expense Reports Input, Oracle WebCenter Imaging recognizes the files by the file name mask \*.exmdat. The metadata file contains two fields: **Full File Path** and **Expense Report Identifier** separated by a delimiter. Oracle WebCenter Imaging uses the "|" delimiter to derive the two fields from the metadata file.

Oracle WebCenter Imaging retrieves the receipt image files from the input agent directory and stores it in Universal Content Management. Oracle WebCenter Imaging then initiates the Add Attachment to Expense Report service defined in the workflow configuration to attach the receipt image to the expense report. It does this by creating an entry in the FND\_ATTACHMENTS table. The attachment record stores the URL to the Universal Content Management location of the attachment. If the expense report hasn't been submitted for approval, the Add Attachment to Expense Report service initiates the expense report approval process.

## Add Attachment to Expense Report Service

The application provides the Add Attachment to Expense Report service to attach receipt images to expense reports and optionally initiate approval processing. This service is defined in the Workflow Configuration region of Oracle WebCenter Imaging. The Add Attachment to Expense Report service creates an entry in the FND\_ATTACHMENTS table to the Universal Content Management location where the image is stored. This service also initiates the approval process for expense reports that require approval.

## Expenses Work Area

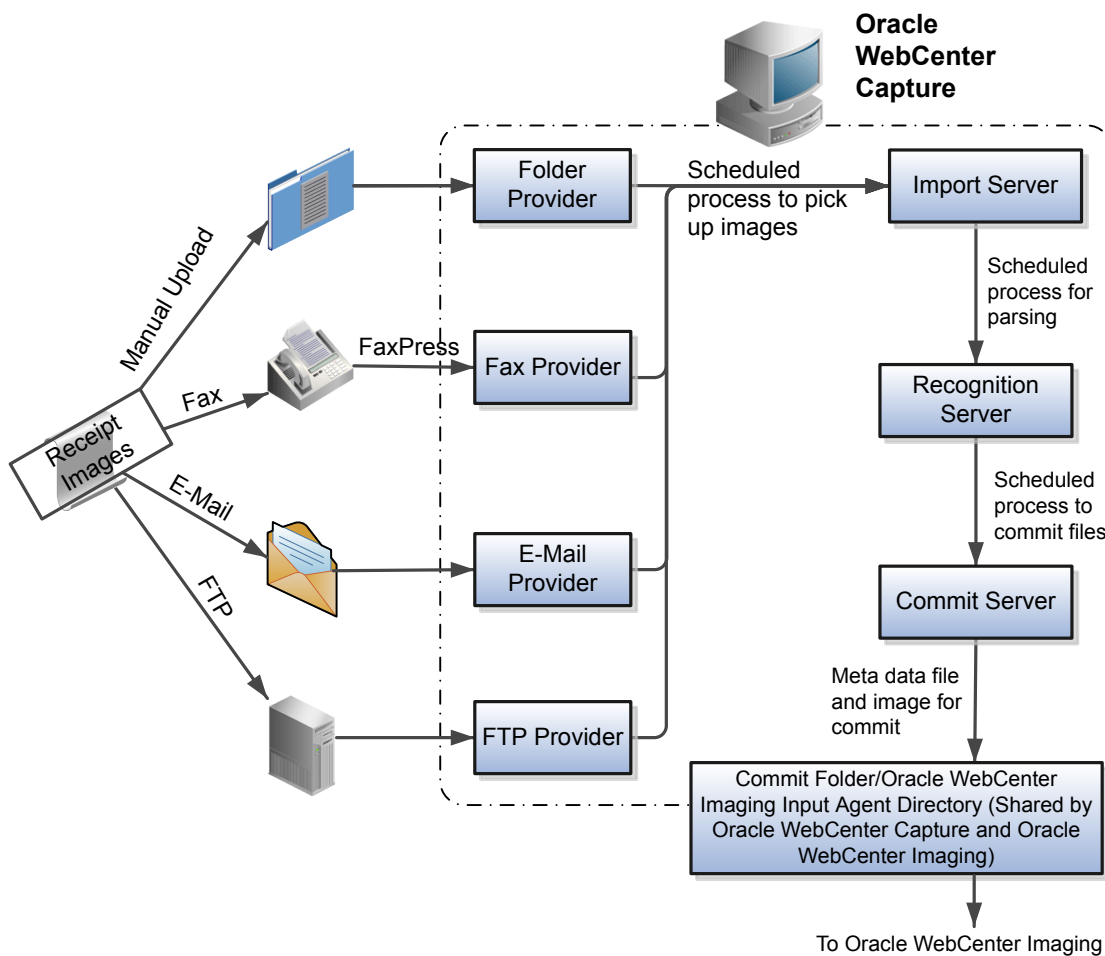
When receipt images are attached to an expense report, you can view and annotate the receipt images in the Expenses work area.

## How Setup Components That Affect Receipt Image Processing Work Together

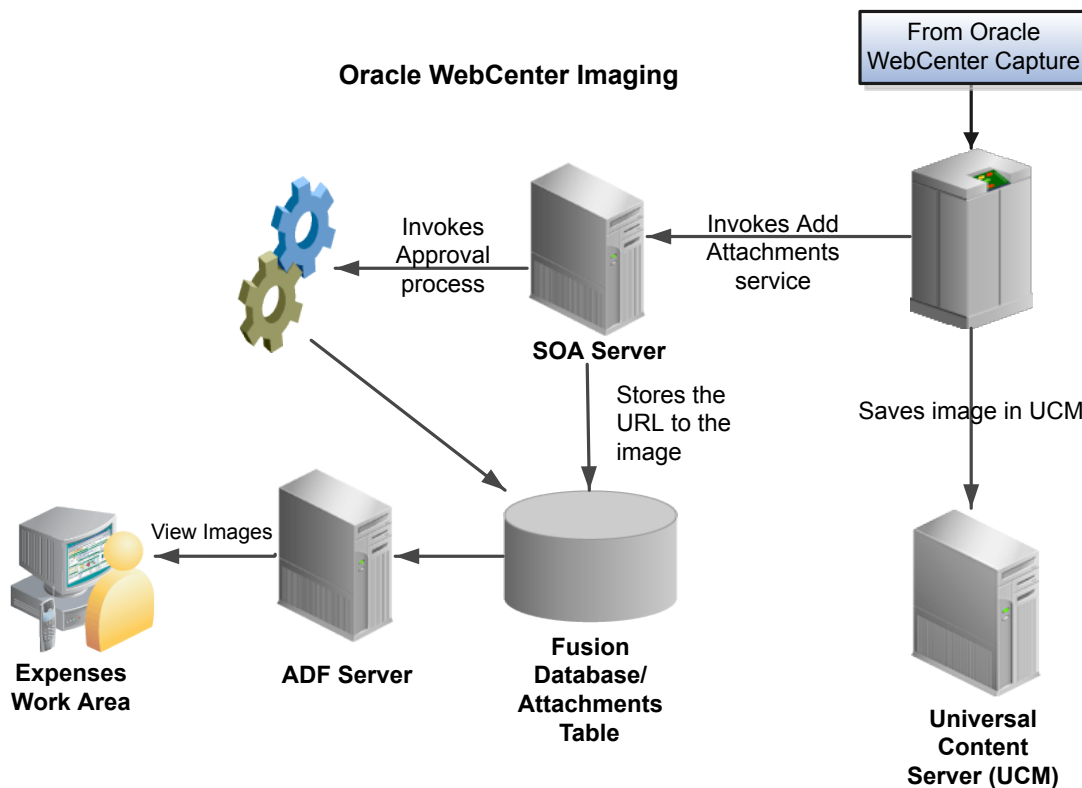
Setups in Oracle Expenses Cloud, Oracle WebCenter Imaging, and Oracle WebCenter Capture affect receipt image processing.

 **Note:** Setup is applicable only for Expenses On-Premises implementations. For Expenses Cloud, setup is predefined.

The following figure shows the Oracle WebCenter Capture components that affect receipt image processing.



The following figure shows the Oracle WebCenter Imaging components that affect receipt image processing.



## Setting Up the Application to Wait for Receipts

If your company requires receipts to be submitted before managerial approval of expense reports, you can set up the application to do so. Set **Receipts Required Before Approval** to **Yes** on the Manage Expenses System Options page. Then, expense reports are not submitted for approval until receipts are received.

To enable barcode printing on the report's printable page, set the Display Bar Code to **Yes** on the Manage Expenses System Options page.

## Setting Up Oracle WebCenter Imaging for Integration with the Application

During the deployment of Oracle Applications Cloud, Oracle WebCenter Imaging is automatically installed at your company with the configuration required for integrating with the application. You can access the configuration details for the application by signing in Oracle WebCenter Imaging as a user with the FUN\_FINANCIAL\_APPLICATION\_ADMINISTRATOR role.

The Oracle WebCenter Imaging configuration that is pertinent for the application includes the following:

- Application definition
- Input definition
- Search definition

The application definition captures application security, document security, field definition of the parameters required for Oracle WebCenter Imaging to process the images, and the workflow configuration. The application definition for the application is called Expense Reports Application. This application definition contains the packaged configuration for Oracle


WebCenter Imaging to integrate with the application. The following table describes the application details predefined for the Expense Reports Application.

Region	Component	Details
Application Security	Not applicable	Application security captures the roles, also called security groups, that can access the application definition and modify the details. By default, the FUN_FINANCIAL_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR role is given access to the Expense Reports Application definition.
Document Security	Roles	<p>By default, the following two roles are given access to view receipt images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• EXM_AUDITOR job role. During expense report auditing, auditors are required to verify receipt images to ensure the validity of the expenses.</li><li>• PER_EMPLOYEE_ABSTRACT abstract role. This role is given document access to enable all employees to access receipt images from their expense reports in the application. When the receipt image is called from the application, Universal Content Management checks whether the role accessing the document has the necessary privileges in Oracle WebCenter Imaging. The document is displayed in the application only if the user has sufficient privileges. At a minimum, an employee must have view, write, and delete access.</li></ul>
Document Security	Document Access	In addition to view, write, and delete, Oracle WebCenter Imaging allows users to annotate the image. To annotate, users must have one of the following for document access: Annotate Standard or Annotate Restricted. Users with Annotate Restricted access can create annotations that can be hidden from users without Annotate Restricted access.
Workflow Configuration	Not applicable	Workflow configuration stores the details of the service initiated by Oracle WebCenter Imaging that attaches the receipt images to expense reports using the expense report identifier. This service also initiates the expense report approval flow if the expense report must be approved after the receipt of images.

The input definition captures the folder location where Oracle WebCenter Imaging scans for receipt images and the format of the metadata file accompanying the receipt image. The input definition for the application, called Expense Reports Input, is created during deployment and contains the details described in the following table.

Region	Description
File Parameters	<p>The File Parameters region stores the metadata file extension, delimiter used in the metadata file, and the sample file. Sample values are provided for the input mask and delimiter. In Oracle WebCenter Imaging, this step is called Review Sample File.</p> <p>You can change the mask and the delimiter to suit your business needs. If you change the data in this step, you must change the mask and the delimiter in Oracle WebCenter Imaging.</p>
Field Mapping	<p>The Field Mapping section maps the fields that are defined in the Field Definition section by the Application Summary page to the metadata file contents. The mapped fields include the <b>Full File Path</b> and the <b>Expense Report ID</b>.</p>
Input Security	<p>The Input Security region defines who can modify the input definition. By default, the FUN_FINANCIAL_ APPLICATIONS_ ADMINISTRATOR role is given access to modify the input definition.</p>

The search definition stores the roles that are given access to search for documents by logging directly into Oracle WebCenter Imaging.

 **Note:** No manual configuration is required for Oracle WebCenter Imaging. Oracle WebCenter Imaging's input folder points to a storage host, which is configured during Oracle WebCenter Imaging deployment.

## Setting Up Oracle WebCenter Capture for Integration with the Application

Your company must manually install Oracle WebCenter Capture on a Windows computer. Oracle WebCenter Capture provides the packaged configuration for uploading receipt images to a folder for processing. Manual changes to the packaged configuration are required, however, to tailor Oracle WebCenter Capture to meet your company's specific needs.

To facilitate receipt image processing, you must set up an Oracle WebCenter Capture file cabinet. The packaged file cabinet for the application is called Expense Reports. The configuration for the commit server, which it uses to create and save the metadata file, is called Expense Reports Commit Text. During the Oracle WebCenter Capture file cabinet setup, you define the following:

- Mapping of relevant information in Oracle WebCenter Capture to Oracle WebCenter Imaging
- Location of the folder where processed receipt images and corresponding metadata files are stored

The following table contains the information you must capture during Oracle WebCenter Capture setup.

File Cabinet Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
File Cabinet Index Fields		Expense Report ID	The field in the metadata file that stores the value of the parsed barcode.
		Delimiter	The delimiter character that separates the data in the metadata file. The delimiter is " ".
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest1	Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest1 to Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest4 store the absolute path to the location of the folder where image files and metadata

File Cabinet Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
			<p>files are stored for processing by Oracle WebCenter Imaging. These four fields are defined to accommodate folder locations that exceed the length limit. The location of the folder is derived as Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest1   Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest2    Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest3    Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest4.</p> <p>Deploying company must change the value to reflect the destination folder in its system.</p>
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest2	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the destination folder in its system.
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest3	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the destination folder in its system.
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest4	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the destination folder in its system.
Commit Profile/ Commit Driver Configuration/ General/ Text File Folder	Do Not Create Commit Text File	Unchecked	
	Export Folder	Example: C:\Oracle WebCenter Capture Projects\Expenses\Export	<p>The folder where metadata files are stored by Oracle WebCenter Capture after processing.</p> <p>Deploying company must change the value to reflect the export folder in its system.</p>
	File Extension	exmdat	
Commit Profile/ Commit Driver Configuration/ General/ Document Folder	Export Folder	Example: C:\Oracle WebCenter Capture Projects\Expenses\Export	<p>The folder where images are stored by Oracle WebCenter Capture after processing.</p> <p>Deploying company must change the value to reflect the export folder in its system.</p>
	Create a Folder per Committed Batch	Unchecked	
Formatting	Field Delimiter	None	

File Cabinet Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
	Fields to Include	Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest1	The details written into the metadata file and the format. This includes the full file path of the processed image file and the expense report identifier separated by the delimiter.
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest2	
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest3	
		Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest4	For example, the resulting entry in the image file looks like: / slot/ ems7795/ appmgr/ provisioning/ mwhome/ instance/ domains/ machine/ visioncorporation/ com/ CommonDomain/ Oracle WebCenter Imaging/ InputAgent/ Input/ 100000012512081TIF  100000012512081
		File Name Relative Path	
		Delimiter	
		Expense Report ID	
Document File Naming	Name Document Based on Index Values	Checked	
	Selected Fields	Expense Report ID	These two fields rename the receipt image file.
		Batch ID	Batch ID of the process. The image file when received by Oracle WebCenter Capture is renamed to Expense Report ID - Batch ID to ensure uniqueness of receipt image file name.
Document Output Format		TIFF - Multiple Page	

The import server setup defines the details required for the different providers, such as the email provider and the folder provider that deliver receipt images. The email provider does not support SSL connections.

Email provider and folder provider sample configurations are included with Oracle WebCenter Capture. If you plan to receive images through fax or FTP, you must configure the settings for the fax provider or the FTP provider respectively.

The following table contains the information you must capture during the import server setup.

Import Server Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
email Provider			
Batch Job Settings/Job for email Provider/ General	File Cabinet	Expense Reports	Name of the file cabinet setup.
	Batch Prefix	EXM-EM	
	Log File Path		Enter the local directory path for the log file.

Import Server Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
			Example: C:\Program Files \Oracle\Document Capture \Logs.
Processing	If Invalid Page Found or Time Out Occurs	Abort batch	
Import Output	Retain Native Image Format	Yes	Example: expense_ receipts@vision. com.
email Provider Settings	email Accounts		Example: expense_ receipts at Vision.com.  Deploying company must change the value to reflect the email accounts in its system.
email Provider Settings/ email Filters/ Attachment Processing	Include Attachments Matching the Following Mask(s)	*.TIF  *.DOC  *.PDF	
email Provider Settings/ email Filters/Post Processing	Upon Successful Import	Delete Messages	
	Upon Failed Import	Don't Delete Message	
Folder Provider			
Batch Job Settings/Job for Folder Provider/ General	File Cabinet	Expense Reports	Name of the file cabinet setup.
	Batch Prefix	EXM-FD	
	Log File Path		Enter the local directory path for the log file.  Example: C:\Program Files \Oracle\Document Capture \Logs.
Processing	If Invalid Page Found or Time Out Occurs	Abort batch	
Import Output	Retain Native Image Format	Yes	
Folder Provider Settings	Import Folder		Enter the local directory path for the import folder.



Import Server Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
			This is the location where the folder provider receives receipt images.
	File Mask	Expenses*	
	Create a New Batch	For Each File	
	After Import/ Add Prefix to Image File Name	Checked	
	Prefix	Processed	
Server/ Scheduler	Schedule Event	Folder/List File Provider - Expense Reports	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the scheduled event in its system.
	Frequency	Every 30 seconds	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the frequency in its system.

The recognition server setup defines the details required for the recognition server component of Oracle WebCenter Capture to derive relevant details from receipt image files.

The following table contains the information you must capture during the recognition server setup.

Recognition Server Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
Batch Job Settings/ General	Batch Job Name	Expense Reports	
	File Cabinet	Expense Reports	Name of the file cabinet setup.
	Batch Prefix	EXM	
	Log File Path		Enter the local directory path for the log file.
	Use Commit Server	Checked	
	If Pages Remain After Processing, Notify by email		Enter the email ID to be notified if an error occurs while processing a batch.
Batch Job Settings/ Processing	Each Batch Consists of	One Document Only	
	Pages to Read Barcodes	1	
Document Separation	Bar Code	Expense Report ID	

Recognition Server Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
	Clear All Index Values	Checked	
	Keep Document Separator	Checked	
Bar Code Recognition	Auto Detect	Code 128	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the auto detect in its system if the barcode is generated using another code.
	Number of Bar Code to Detect	Limit to 1	
Bar Code	Bar Code Definition	Expense Report ID	
Fields/ Delimiter	Auto Populate with	Default of "/"	
Fields	Expense Report ID	Required	
	Auto Populate With	Bar Code	
	Description	Expense Report ID	
Fields/Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest1	Auto Populate with	Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest1 Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest2 Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest3 Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest4	<p>This is the folder where Oracle WebCenter Capture posts images and metadata files for processing by Oracle WebCenter Imaging. Due to length limitation, four fields are available to enter the partial absolute path information that, when concatenated, gives the complete absolute path.</p> <p>If the file path is long, enter partial paths in all four fields. If you don't need four fields to enter the complete path, you can leave the remaining fields in Oracle WebCenter Imaging Dest&lt;n&gt;blank.</p> <p>Deploying company must change the value to reflect the destination folder in its system.</p>
Server/ Scheduler	Schedule Event	Expense Reports	Deploying company must select the applicable file cabinet.
	Frequency	Every 30 seconds	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the frequency in its system.

The commit server setup defines the details to transfer the receipt image files and the metadata files to a location accessible to Oracle WebCenter Imaging for processing.

The following table contains the information you must capture during the commit server setup.

Commit Server Setup	Field	Predefined Value	Additional Information
Batch Job Settings/ General	File Cabinet	Expense Reports	
	Batch Criteria	Process Specific Batches with Prefix	EXM
	Batch Status	All	
	Processing Order	Sort Before Commit Order by Batch Name Ascending	
Server/ Scheduler	Schedule Event	Expense Reports	Deploying company must select the applicable file cabinet.
	Frequency	Every 30 seconds	Deploying company must change the value to reflect the frequency in its system.
	Server	Activate	

#### Related Topics

- [Why do I have to configure the barcode font mapping](#)



# 8 Expense Reimbursements

## How Third-Party Expense Reimbursements Are Processed

Expense reports can be reimbursed through Oracle Fusion Payables or any legacy or third-party application. If you want to issue expense reimbursements through a legacy or third-party application, you can use the third-party expense reimbursement process.

### Settings That Affect Third-Party Expense Reimbursements

On the Manage Expenses System Options page, you can use the **Pay Expense Reports Through** option to choose one of the following for expense reimbursement:

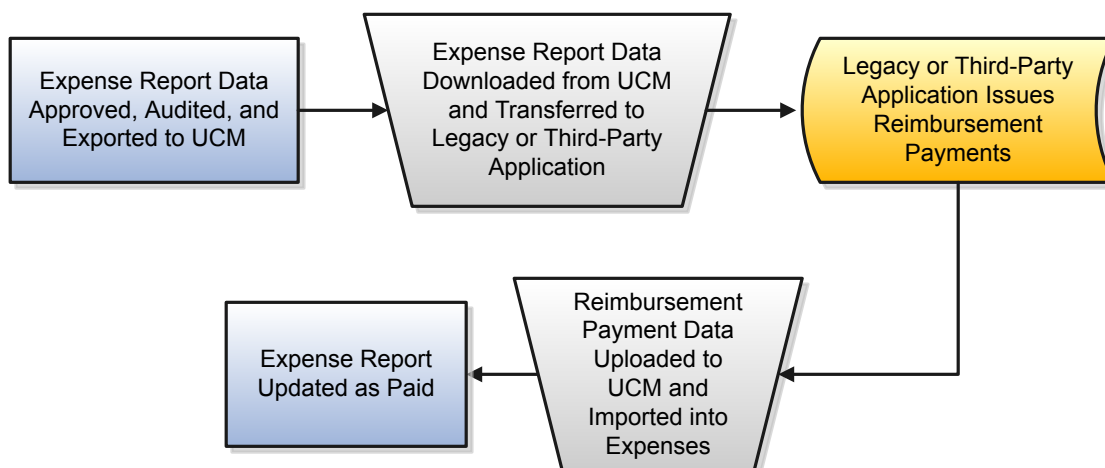
- Payables
- Third-party application

A third-party application may be a legacy application within your company or an outside supplier.

## How Third-Party Expense Reimbursements Are Processed

The following diagram illustrates the export of expense report data from Oracle Fusion Expenses to a legacy or third-party application, the issuance of reimbursement payments by the legacy or third-party application, and the import of reimbursement payment data back to Expenses.

The following figure illustrates the export of expense report data from Oracle Fusion Expenses to a legacy or third-party application, the issuance of reimbursement payments by the legacy or third-party application, and the import of reimbursement payment data back to Expenses.



The following table describes the flow of expense report data when you use a legacy or third-party expense report reimbursement application.

Sequence	Action	Result
1.	In Expenses, employees create expense reports, which are approved, and audited.	Expense reports are eligible for reimbursement.
2.	<p>In Expenses, you can schedule the following processes to automatically export the expense report data from Expenses to your legacy or third-party application in .xml format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process Expense Reimbursements and Cash Advances</li> <li>Create Card Issuer Invoices</li> </ul>	<p>The exported expense report data files contain all the information necessary to issue payments and record accounting entries in your legacy or third-party application. The Expenses processes automatically export expense report data from Expenses to the following locations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Universal Content Manager <b>Navigato</b>r &gt; <b>Tools</b> &gt; <b>File Import and Export</b> link.</li> <li>Search Results section on the Scheduled Processes page: <b>Navigato</b>r &gt; <b>Tools</b> &gt; <b>Scheduled Processes</b>.</li> </ul> <p>UCM facilitates easy tracking and download of expense report data files.</p>
3.	From the <b>fin/expenses/export directory</b> , you can download the expense report data files in .xml format and transfer them to your legacy or third-party application.	Your legacy or third-party application processes the expense report data files.
4.	<p>Your legacy or third-party application issues expense report reimbursement payments to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employees</li> <li>Credit card issuers</li> </ul>	Employees and credit card issuers receive payments.
5	To transfer reimbursement payment data from your legacy or third-party application, you upload your expense report reimbursement data to the <b>fin/expenses/import directory</b> .	<p>Expense report reimbursement information transfers from the legacy or third-party application back to Expenses in a specific .xml format with a .txt or .xml extension.</p> <p>The specific .xml format depends on the expense report payment option selected by your company for corporate card transactions and whether the data file is for cash advances.</p>
6	From Expenses, you schedule the Update Expense Report Status process.	<p>The Update Expense Report Status process automatically:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updates the expense reports in Expenses as paid</li> </ul>

Sequence	Action	Result
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides legacy or third-party reimbursement references in the paid expense reports</li> </ul>

## Expense Report Data Flow Using a Third-Party Application

If you use a legacy or third-party application to process expense report reimbursements, you can export expense report XML data files from Oracle Fusion Expenses and use them to process data in your legacy or third-party application. After your legacy or third-party application processes reimbursement payments, you can import the reimbursement payment XML data files back to Expenses.

### Expense Report XML Data Exported to Universal Content Manager


To create expense report XML data files for export to a legacy or third-party application, schedule the following automatic processes in Expenses using **Navigator > Tools > Scheduled Processes**:

- Process Expense Reimbursements and Cash Advances
- Create Card Issuer Invoices

The resulting XML expense report data files are available from the Search Results section on the Scheduled Processes page or you can download them from Universal Content Manager (UCM) at **fin/expenses/export directory** using **Navigator > Tools > File Import and Export** link.

The following figure shows an example of an expense report XML data file format that is automatically created when an expense report containing cash expense items is processed by the Process Expense Reimbursements and Cash Advances process.

```
<ExpenseReports>
  <RequestId>10613</RequestId>
  <ExpenseReport>
    <Number>ALLBU:0029511328</Number>
    <Purpose>jp apr 11</Purpose>
    <ReferenceKey>300100029511328</ReferenceKey>
    <ExpenseReportDate>2014-02-26</ExpenseReportDate>
    <PaymentCurrency>USD</PaymentCurrency>
    <PaymentAmount>95</PaymentAmount>
    <PaymentMethod>CHECK</PaymentMethod>
    <Source>Employee</Source>
    <EmployeeName>Brown, Ted</EmployeeName>
    <EmployeeNumber>10026335781</EmployeeNumber>
    <EmployeeAddressCode>OFFICE</EmployeeAddressCode>
    <PayeeName>Ted Brown</PayeeName>
    <LegalEntity>Vision Corporation</LegalEntity>
    <LedgerName>Vision Operations (USA)</LedgerName>
    <BusinessUnit>Vision Operations</BusinessUnit>
    <LiabilityAccount>
      <Company>01</Company>
      <Department>000</Department>
      <Account>2210</Account>
      <Sub-Account>0000</Sub-Account>
      <Product>000</Product>
    </LiabilityAccount>
    <Lines>
      <Line>
        <ReferenceKey>300100029511329</ReferenceKey>
        <ExpenseDate>2014-02-26</ExpenseDate>
        <ExpenseType>Miscellaneous</ExpenseType>
        <Amount>95</Amount>
        <Description>Miscellaneous-Miscellaneous</Description>
        <Location>Academy, Albany, New York, United States</Location>
        <ReceiptCurrency>USD</ReceiptCurrency>
        <ReceiptConversionRate>1</ReceiptConversionRate>
        <ReceiptAmount>95</ReceiptAmount>
        <TaxClassification>CA-Sales Tax</TaxClassification>
        <ExpenseAccount>
          <Company>01</Company>
          <Department>520</Department>
          <Account>7699</Account>
          <Sub-Account>0000</Sub-Account>
          <Product>000</Product>
        </ExpenseAccount>
      </Line>
    </Lines>
  </ExpenseReport>
</ExpenseReports>
```


 **Note:** Expense report data files that contain corporate card expenses for Company Pay or Both Pay payment options have a different XML format structure than the preceding example. Similarly, expense report data files for cash advances also contain a different XML format structure.



## Expense Report Reimbursement XML Data Imported Into Universal Content Manager

To transfer expense report reimbursement data from a legacy or third-party application back to Expenses, the data must appear in XML format. Upload the correctly formatted XML reimbursement payment data files to UCM at **fin/expenses/import directory**.

 **Tip:** For optimal file handling, the best practice is to use the following naming convention for reimbursement payment data files: **MM-DD-YYYY HH-MM ExmPaymentExtract**.

 **Caution:** The XML files you upload to UCM must be in precisely the same structure as shown in the following figure.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Payments>
  <Payer>
    <PayerName>Vision Operations (USA)</PayerName>
    <PayerBankName>Bank of the West</PayerBankName>
    <PayerAddress>
      <AddressLine1>500 Wolfe Road</AddressLine1>
      <AddressLine2 />
      <AddressLine3 />
      <AddressLine4 />
      <City>Santa Clara</City>
      <State>CA</State>
      <PostalCode>95051</PostalCode>
      <Province>CA</Province>
      <County>Santa Clara</County>
      <CountryCode>US</CountryCode>
    </PayerAddress>
    <Payment>
      <PaymentReferenceNumber>290514</PaymentReferenceNumber>
      <PaymentDate>2014-05-29</PaymentDate>
      <PaymentCurrency>USD</PaymentCurrency>
      <PaymentAmount>32.00</PaymentAmount>
      <PayeeName>Mary Johnson</PayeeName>
      <EmployeeNumber>10026335772</EmployeeNumber>
      <PaymentMethod>Check</PaymentMethod>
      <CheckNumber>290214</CheckNumber>
      <MailingAddressType>Office</MailingAddressType>
      <PayeeBankName>Wells Fargo</PayeeBankName>
      <PayeeBranchName>San Jose Branch</PayeeBranchName>
      <PayeeMaskedBankAccountNumber>*****7899</PayeeMaskedBankAccountNumber>
    <Documents>
      <Document>
        <DocumentReferenceNumber>EXM0045554490</DocumentReferenceNumber>
        <DocumentCurrency>USD</DocumentCurrency>
        <DocumentAmount>32.00</DocumentAmount>
        <AmountPaid>32.00</AmountPaid>
      </Document>
    </Documents>
  </Payment>
</Payer>
</Payments>
```

## 9 Mobile Devices

### Disable the Scan Option on Mobile Expenses

You can disable the Scan option on the Expenses mobile application by configuring a profile option.

You must have one of the following roles to disable the Scan option:

- Application Implementation Consultant
- Financial Administrator
- Expense Manager

#### Defining the Profile Option

To disable the Scan option, define the profile option, EXM\_MOBILE\_DISABLE\_SCAN, and set the profile option value to **Yes**.

To define the profile option, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Functional Area: Expenses
  - Task: Manage Profile Options
2. On the Manage Profile Options page, click the **Create (+)** icon.
3. On the Create Profile Option page in the **Profile Option Code** field, enter **EXM\_MOBILE\_DISABLE\_SCAN**.
4. In the **Profile Display Name** field, enter a profile display name.
5. From the Application choice list, select **Expenses**.
6. From the Module choice list, select **Expenses**.
7. From the **Start Date** field, enter a start date.
8. Click **Save and Close**.
9. On the Manage Profile Options page in the Profile Options Levels section, select **Site** as the Level value.
10. Select both the **Enabled** and the **Updatable** check boxes.
11. Click **Save and Close**.

#### Defining the Profile Option Value

To define the profile option value, complete these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
  - Offering: Financials
  - Task: Manage Administrator Profile Values
2. On the Manage Administrator Profile Values page in the Search: Profile Option section, enter **EXM\_MOBILE\_DISABLE\_SCAN** in the **Profile Option Code** field.
3. Click **Search**.
4. In the Search Results: Profile Options section, select the profile option you created.

5. In the Profile Values section, click the **Create** (+) icon.
6. From the Profile Level choice list, select **Site**.
7. From the Profile Value choice list, select **Y**.
8. Click **Save and Close**.

# Glossary

## **barcode**

A printable barcode that uniquely identifies each employee's expense report.

## **both pay**

The deploying company pays the corporate card issuer for business expenses and the employee pays the corporate card issuer for personal expenses.

## **card feed file**

A file containing corporate card transactions that originated from the card issuer's server.

## **company pay**

The deploying company pays the corporate card issuer for all transactions.

## **corporate card issuer**

A bank that issues corporate cards.

## **corporate card program**

An agreement between the corporate card issuer and the deploying company that governs the issuance of corporate cards to the deploying company's employees and the payments to the card issuer.

## **eFolio**

Summary corporate card transactions. Also known as Level 2 transactions.

## **error amount**

When setting up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards, an amount that exceeds the cash limit and for which an error displays during expense entry in the expense report, which prevents submission of the report.

## **error tolerance**

When setting up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards, a range that is from the cash limit up to the error tolerance amount. Over that amount, the expense report is not submitted.

## **error tolerance percentage**

When setting up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards, a percentage that, when added to the cash limit, defines the error amount. If you spend more than the error amount, the expense report is not submitted.

## **expense template**

An administrator-defined list of related expense types. When you enter expenses on your expense report, you must select a specific expense template.

### **expense type**

A potential expense that you can incur that has been defined by the administrator during setup.

### **FTP**

Acronym for File Transfer Protocol. A system for transferring computer files, generally by the Internet.

### **individual pay**

The employee pays the corporate card issuer for all corporate card transactions.

### **Level 2**

Summary corporate card transactions. Also known as eFolio.

### **Level 3**

Detailed corporate card transactions.

### **merchant category code**

A four-digit code that identifies the industry in which the deploying company operates.

### **MIS industry code**

A code provided by the card issuer that identifies the type of transaction.

### **payment method**

Indicates the method of payment, such as check, cash, or credit.

### **payment request**

A grouping of documents payable for which payment is requested. A payment request specifies the template to use in Oracle Fusion Payables, selects invoices for a pay run, and groups the invoices into payments based on setup rules.

### **SIC code**

A Standard Industrial Classification code, which represents a United States government system for classifying industries by a four-digit code.

### **transaction codes**

Codes that the card issuer assigns to corporate card transactions in the corporate card feed file.

### **warning amount**

When setting up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards, an amount that exceeds the cash limit and for which a warning displays during expense entry in the expense report.

### **warning tolerance**

When setting up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards, a range that is from the cash limit up to the warning tolerance amount. Over that amount, a warning displays.

### **warning tolerance percentage**

When setting up corporate card usage policies to enforce the use of corporate cards, a percentage that, when added to the cash limit, defines the warning amount. If you spend more than the warning amount, a warning displays.

